B5

OWNERS MANUAL

DENZA

TECHNOLOGY DRIVES ELEGANCE

Foreword

Thank you for choosing DENZA. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully before use and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing DENZA. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Illustration Index

Safety

Instrument Cluster

Controller Operation

Using and Driving

In-Vehicle Devices

Maintenance

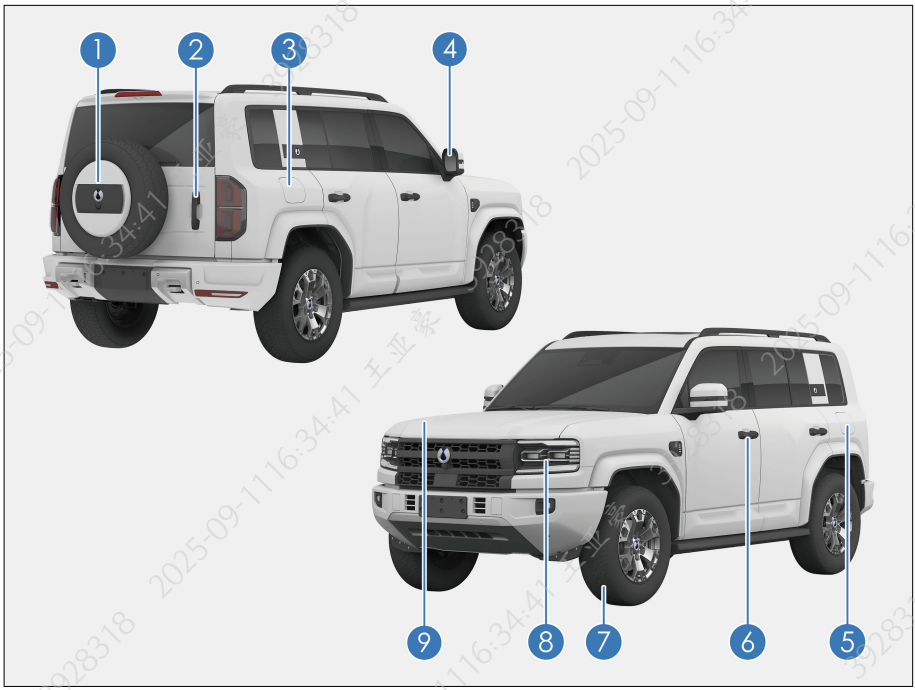
When Faults Occur

Technical Data

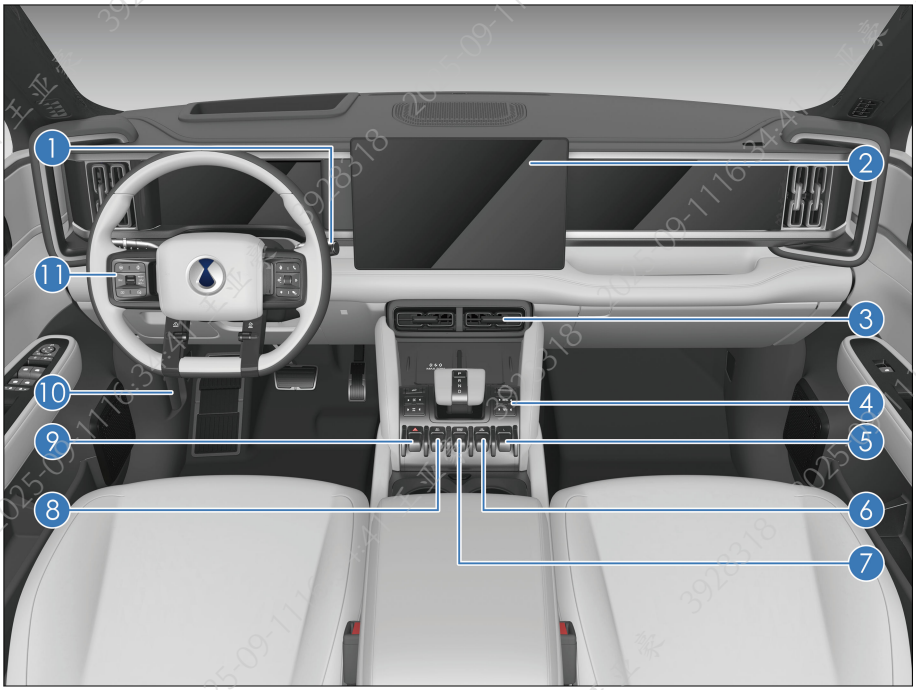
Abbreviations

Illustration Index

Exterior



Dashboard



1 Front Windshield Wipers and Washer ***P71***

Rear Windshield Wipers and Washer ***P73***

2 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P178***

3 Front Center Vent ***P188***

4 Front A/C Panel ***P184***

5 L Switch Button ***P118***

6 Driving Mode ***P118***

7 START/STOP Button ***P61***

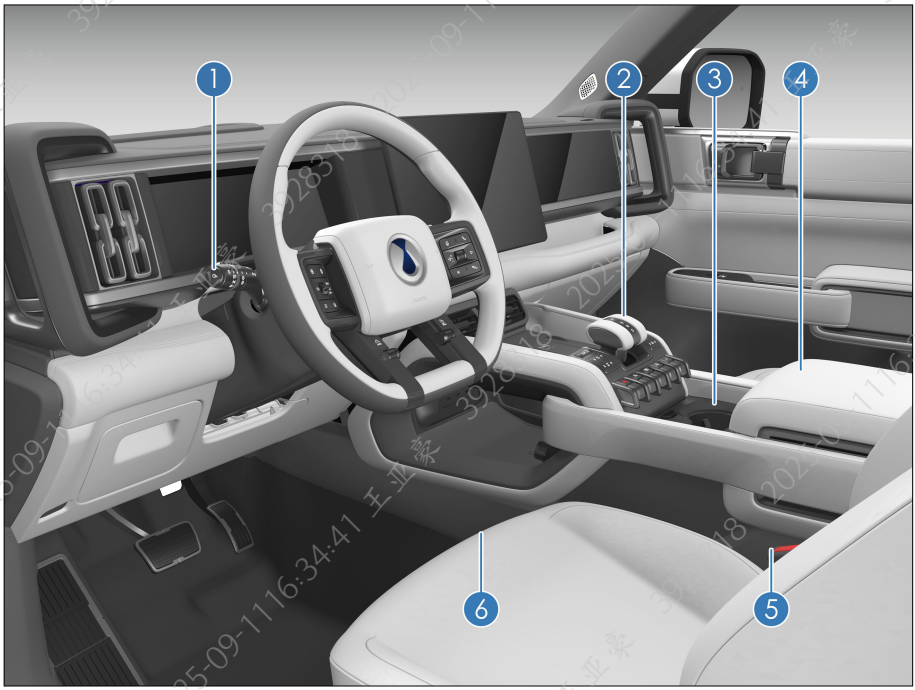
8 EV/HEV Mode Switch Button ***P26***

9 Hazard Warning Light ***P80***

10 Hood Handle ***P219***

11 Steering Wheel Switches ***P69***

Center Console



1 Light Switches ***P76***

2 Gear Shift Controls ***P133***

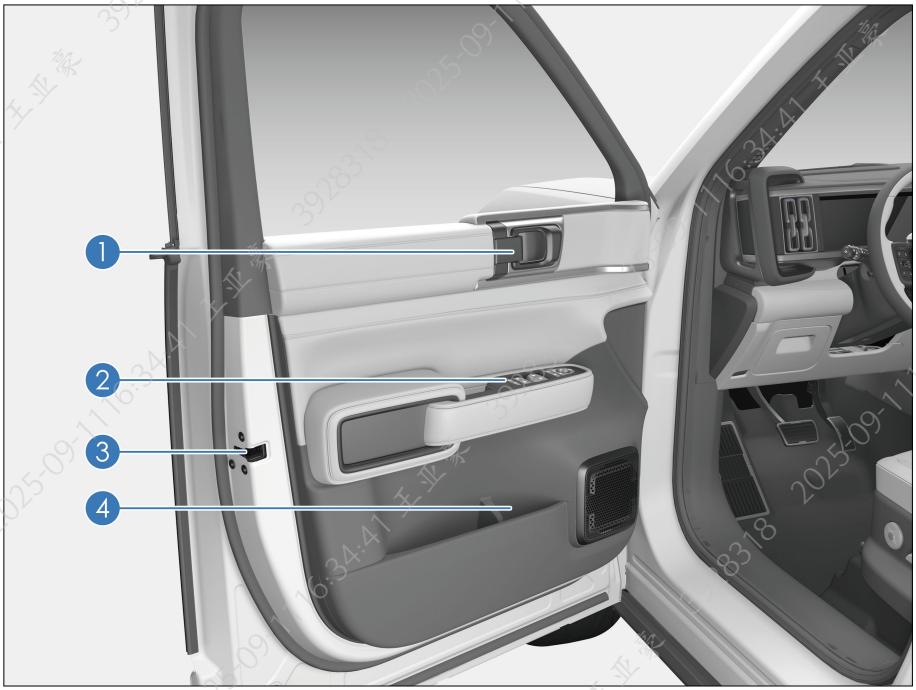
3 Cup Holder ***P191***

4 Refrigerator ***P192***

5 Using Seat Belts ***P12***

6 Seats ***P63***

Doors



1 Interior Door Handle ***P55***

2 Power Window Switches ***P78***

Central Locking ***P79***

Side Mirror Adjustment ***P75***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P60***

4 Door Bins ***P190***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see ***P23***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- All occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to avoid personal injury or death in case of an accident.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack to pull out the seat belt.

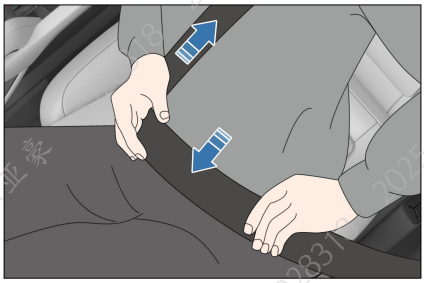
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

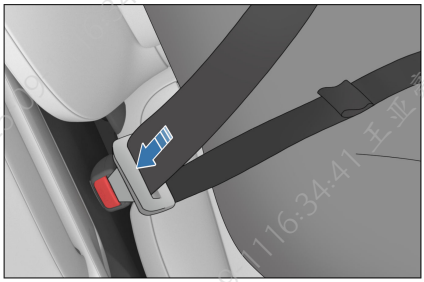
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (See ***P64***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.

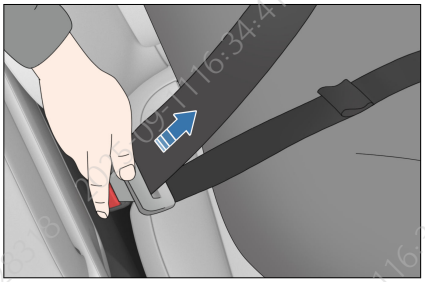


WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder, The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder, otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

4. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly. Check for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a DENZA authorized dealer or

WARNING

service provider. Seat belts with pretensioner function activated must be replaced.

- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go on and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

  Any unfastened seat belt will trigger corresponding indicator to light up and flash.

- Display of unfastened seat belt

  The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder

  If any vehicle occupant has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.

- When the driver and passengers have buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the seat until the function is restored.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- Airbags are a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include front seat side airbags, rear seat side airbags and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-DENZA genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.

WARNING

- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag module did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for airbag testing.

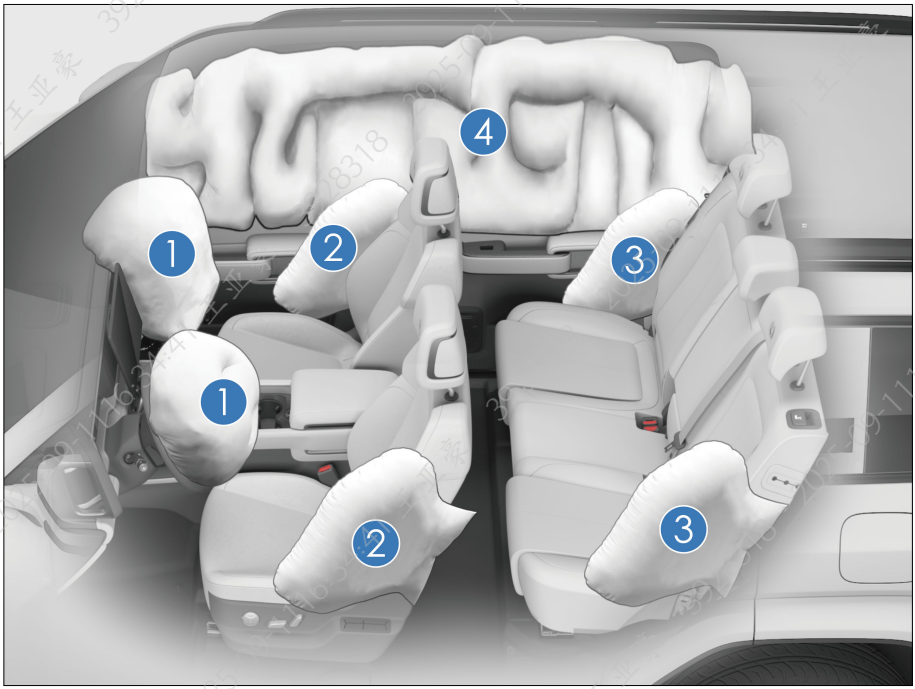
Airbag warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- When the power supply of the whole vehicle is in the "ON" gear, the airbag warning lamp lights up for about 5 seconds and then goes out, indicating that the system is normal.

WARNING

- If the airbag warning light is solid on, it indicates that the system is out of order. It is recommended to check the airbag system at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible, otherwise the function of the airbag will be affected.
- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Rear passenger side airbags

④ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

This vehicle is equipped with driver and front passenger airbags, when the airbag system ECU detects a moderate to severe front impact after vehicle power-on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbags deploy.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso in place. The airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- The airbag deploys within a thousandth of a second to further

protect drivers and occupants in an accident.

- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- A cloud of dust from the airbag surface may come off when the airbag deploys. Although such powder is non-toxic, individuals with respiratory problem might experience some temporary discomfort.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Seat Side Airbags

If the vehicle is equipped with front and rear seat side airbags (mounted on the outside of seatbacks and marked with "AIRBAG"):

- When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger side, the airbag on the passenger side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

In a vehicle equipped with seat side airbags:

- Prevent the seatbacks from getting wet. If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.

Side Curtain Airbags

- The vehicle is equipped with left and right-side curtain airbags (mounted at the joint between the side walls of the body and the ceiling, with the A-pillar, B-pillar, and C-pillar shields marked with "AIRBAG", as shown in the illustration.)
- When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions of the side curtain airbag are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the impacted side.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: The airbag system may be triggered in

certain collisions. Whether a vehicle collision will trigger the airbag(s) is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles and vehicle speed.

- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The electronic control unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during a crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the DENZA airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Rollover Protection System

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the rollover protection system, the seat side airbags, curtain airbags and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

Airbag rollover suppression*

- The user can enable or disable airbag rollover inhibitor switch by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → Driving mode App.
- After the switch is turned on, when the side rollover accident occurs, the pre-tightening functions of the side airbag, the air curtain and the seat belt will not be activated to protect the passengers. However, when the side is severely impacted, the rollover induction protection system may still be activated to explode the pre-tightening functions of the side airbag, the air curtain and the seat belt.
- After the switch is turned on, the instrument displays the "RSCA OFF" indicator "; when the vehicle is restarted and powered on, the roll-over sensing protection system function is activated by default.
- After the switch is turned on, if it needs to be turned off, please click the switch button or power on and off the vehicle once.

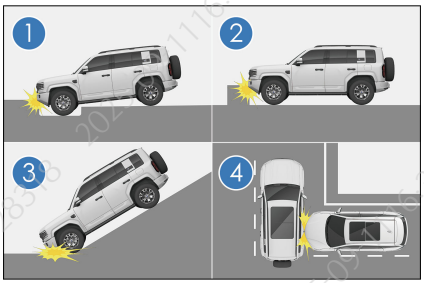
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



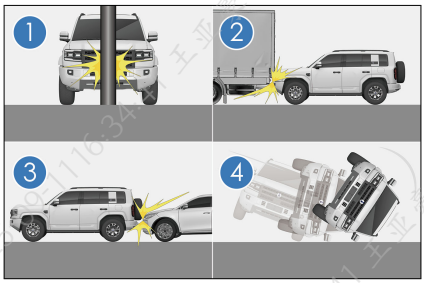
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

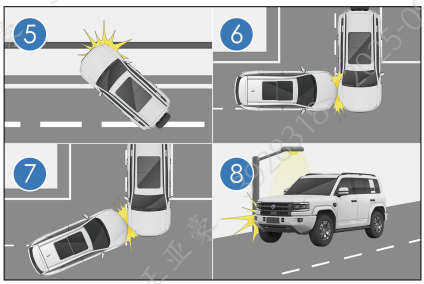


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty

WARNING

caused by airbag deployment in an accident.

- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag

WARNING

system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.

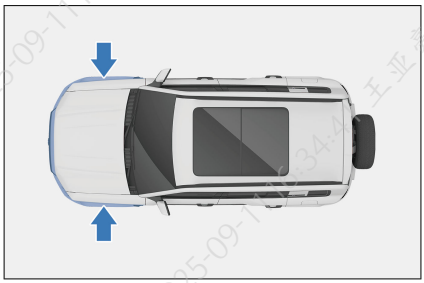
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal

WARNING

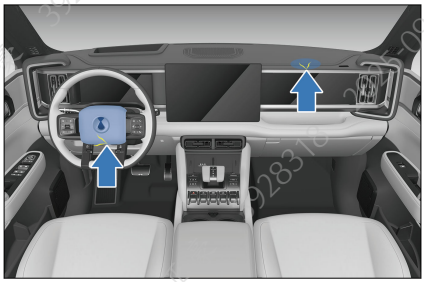
conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

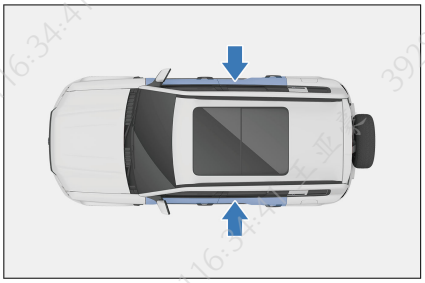
- The airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- The collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- There is a collision with the vehicle door (highlighted area shown) that is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seats with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- Do not install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.

WARNING

- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint system

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint must be homologated by ECE R129.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

Rear outboard seating positions

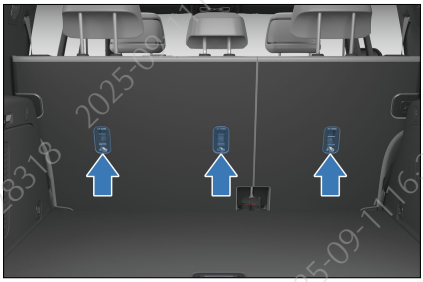
- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.

- The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.

CAUTION

- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

- The rear seats are equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.
- The use of top tether anchorage point with a belted child restraint is allowed in specific markets only.



WARNING

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is without seatback, never remove the head support from the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to locking position.
- When the top tether is used on a rear outboard seat, route it at the outside of each head support post.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Details on child restraint system installation:

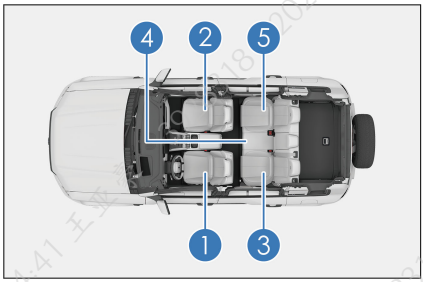
① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

③ Rear left seat

④ Rear center seat

⑤ Rear right seat



Type	Seating Position				
	1	2 a)	3 b)	4 b)	5 b)
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	×	×	Yes	No	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	×	No	No	No
Seating position	×	×	No	No	No

Type	Seating Position				
	1	2 [a]	3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]
suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)					
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	×	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	×	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

[a] If needed, adjust the seat position and seatback angle.

[b] If needed, adjust or even remove the head support. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

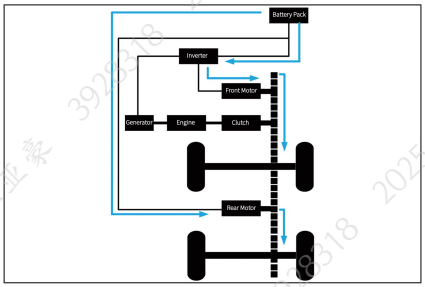
×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this weight group

Working Modes of Dual-Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

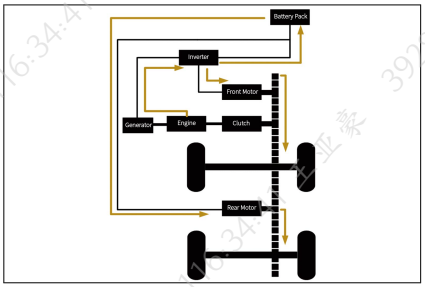


REMINDER

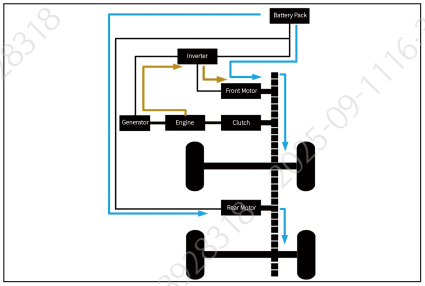
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual mode

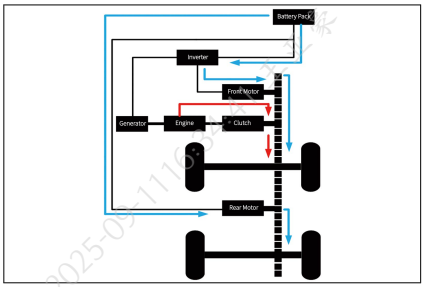
- In HEV mode, the vehicle will be driven by pure electricity for priority when the engine does not start when the battery is high or the power is low. As shown in the pure electric operation mode illustration.
- In HEV mode, the engine starts to enter the series mode to meet the power performance demand when the battery is low or the power is high.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



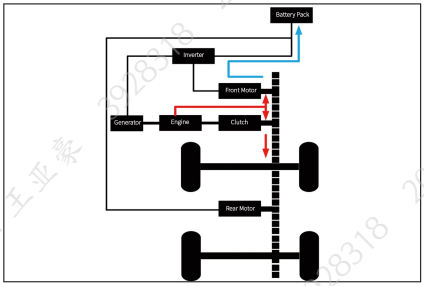
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



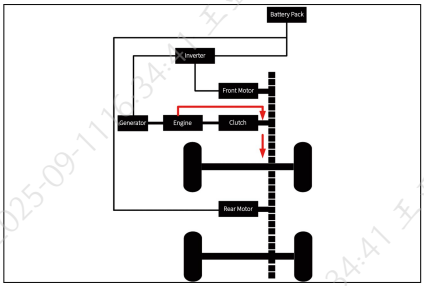
- In HEV mode, the engine starts in parallel mode under some working conditions to improve fuel economy at medium and high speeds.
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.



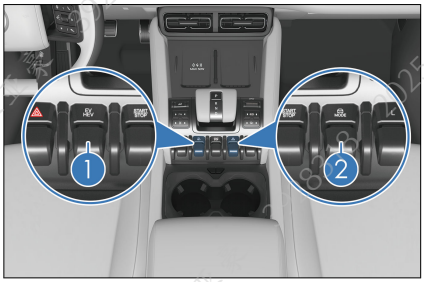
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System

① "EV/HEV" mode button

② Driving mode button



REMINDER

- For information about the driving mode button, see Chapter 4 ***P118*** for details.

EV- eco drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize battery power consumption.

EV- comfort drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and battery power consumption.

EV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamics.

HEV- eco drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Turn the scroll

button on the steering wheel until the ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV- comfort drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button on the steering wheel until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - If the temperature is lower than -30 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be charged.
  - If the temperature is lower than -35 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be discharged.
  - It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

Attention to High-voltage and High-temperature Components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even be life-threatening.
- Please read all the warning labels.

- The vehicle is equipped with a high-temperature and high-pressure electric compressor connected to the power battery.

WARNING

- Do not touch or touch the high temperature and high pressure electric compressor. High temperature and high pressure may cause scald, electric shock and even endanger life.

WARNING

- Please read all the warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator and some other components can reach high temperatures while driving. Read and follow the warning labels on the components.
- The integrated module on the refrigerant side will reach high temperature during driving. Do not touch or touch it. High temperature may cause severe burns.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- The vehicle is powered by a gasoline engine and an electric motor, you may hear engine sounds coming from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed in Neutral, Reverse or Drive for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle, because when the OK indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can move slowly in idle (because the motor drives it).
- When the "OK" indicator is on, if you shift the gear selector to Reverse or Drive without pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle may move slowly. Please pay attention.

- Vehicle repair or maintenance is required. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, it is recommended to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the vehicle needs to be handled because of the use of a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery, it is recommended to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal, shift the vehicle into Park, stop the dual-mode system, and ensure EPB is engaged.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to

WARNING

extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.

- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - The vehicle is powered on without using the smart key start function.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/phone app.

- Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
- Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key/phone app.
- Use a valid phone NFC to unlock the vehicle.
- Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
- Pressing the "START/STOP" button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.
- Turning on the A/C system with a valid phone App.

WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a DENZA vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **System** → **General** → **Legal Information** → **Privacy Statement**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or

control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.

- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to DENZA engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to DENZA data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- DENZA has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.

- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or DENZA services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- DENZA is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- This is because some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed, which is done by cameras detecting objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Footages will be stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Around View Monitor" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you sell or give a vehicle to a new owner for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the DENZA data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- This can also be done by tapping ⚙ → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, DENZA may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country or region, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

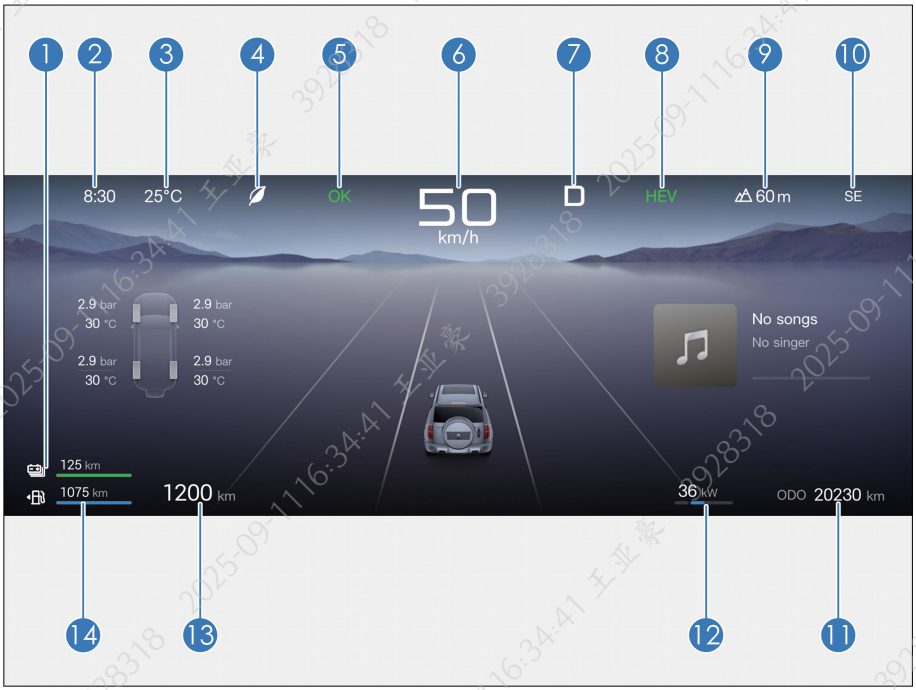
- DENZA has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system (**System** → **General** → **Legal Information** → **Privacy Policy**).

02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1	State of charge (SOC)	8	Dynamic mode
2	Time	9	Elevation
3	Outside temperature	10	Direction
4	Driving Mode	11	Total mileage
5	OK indicator	12	Power meter
6	Speedometer	13	Total Remaining driving range
7	Gear status	14	Fuel gauge

REMINDER

- For safe driving, the instrument cluster may switch to simple mode during occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
  - Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  - While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the START/STOP button to turn the ignition off and then on.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	HEV Indicator		Low beam indicator
	AVH working indicator		HDC indicator
	Snow chain function indicator		Creep mode indicator
	Differential lock status indicator		Front fog light indicator

EV	EV Indicator		Towing mode indicator
	High beam indicator	NOA	High speed navigation aid status indicator*
MAX	ACC status indicator		LDW active indicator
	BSD activated	ECA	AFL adaptive front light
	Sport mode indicator light		Mountain mode indicator
	Economic mode indicator		Normal mode indicator
	Intelligent mode indicator		Snow mode indicator
	Mud mode indicator	ON	Suspension adjustment indicator
	Sand mode Indicator		Rock mode indicator
	Wade mode indicator		AEB indicator
	Suspension fault indicator		Fill function indicator
	Driving power limit warning light		LDW fault indicator
	Tire pressure fault warning light		Oil life monitoring indicator
	Smart key warning light		Main alarm indicator

	Electronic stability control off warning light		ESC system fault warning light
	Rear fog light indicator		Emission fault indicator
	ABS fault warning light		Wading mode fault indicator
	AVAS OFF indicator		CPD fault light
	Suspension service indicator		Traffic light
	Speed limit sign		EPB indicator
	Parking system fault warning light		Sport+ mode indicator
	Seat belt indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Low oil pressure warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	Low-voltage power system warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	Powertrain fault warning light		Motor overheating warning light
	High-voltage battery fault warning light		Headlight fault warning light
	Road sign		

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

 Emission fault indicator

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Continuous operation in

this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.

- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again. Start the engine and look for this warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.

Low fuel warning light

- If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel the vehicle as soon as possible.
- When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.

Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.

ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on for self-check. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the ABS system fails, but the braking system continues to operate normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.

- This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If any malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on. This means the ABS fails. At this time, the brake still provides normal braking force like a conventional vehicle without anti-lock braking function, and the front or rear axle may lock up under large braking force, which will easily lead to steering failure or tail flick. Especially when this fault occurs in rainy and snowy weather, do not depress the brake pedal deeply to avoid losing control of the vehicle. At the same time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle as soon as possible.
- If both the ABS and parking system warning lights go on after the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the braking force distribution system of the front and rear tires has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.

Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check the TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

In any of the above cases, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- A flashing warning light during driving indicates that the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC fault warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5s) or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

REMINDER

- If the ESC fault warning light remains on while the fault warning lights for the ABS and the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.

ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the "ESC OFF" switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.

REMINDER

- Once the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and drive at a low speed when making a sharp turn or avoiding obstacles which appear suddenly, because ESC system is turned off at this time and braking will cause instability.

Driving power limit warning light

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact

a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.

Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the front passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the front passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.

Parking system fault warning light

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- The parking system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, during braking, the ABS does not function, and the vehicle is unstable. Proceed with caution.
- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.
- The brake system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will

CAUTION

not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

 Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

 Zero position indicator light

- If the vehicle loses power due to abnormal operations such as connecting/disconnecting low-voltage batteries or fuses, when the power supply of the vehicle is restored, the zero position indicator light on the instrument cluster lights up.
  - In this case, it is necessary to perform zero self-learning operation of the steering wheel angle, namely: Turn the steering wheel slowly and fully to the left and right respectively, and release it in two to five seconds. Then shut down the engine and wait for over 10 seconds. Restart the vehicle, the indicator goes off, and self-learning is complete.

 Coolant overheating warning light

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.

 Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.

Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power supply system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. Air conditioning, fans, multimedia, etc. Should be turned off, and it is recommended that the car be driven to the nearest DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light lights up.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. It is recommended to drive to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the

high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

Speed limit sign

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended:

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. In this case, check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If it can not be solved, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Stop using remote driving for your safety.	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV function limited	The EV function is limited. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
	Please check the headlight.	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

	AEB warning light	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the BSD system	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD function limited	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the multi-purpose camera	The multi-purpose camera is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The environment limited, the intelligent camera is not available	The intelligent-camera is unavailable. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment.	The solenoid valve is cleaning, please park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the lane departure assist (LDA) system	The LDA is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle as soon as possible, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with electronic smart key, mechanical key, bluetooth key, NFC key card, NFC digital key and digital key plus.

Smart Key

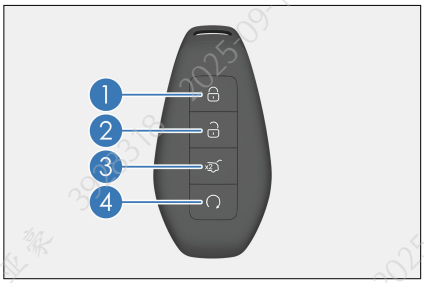
Press the left or right front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Lock button

② Unlock button

③ Trunk release button

④ Start/Stop button



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.

WARNING

- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. For details, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal

CAUTION

operation of electronic smart keys.

- The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.

- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.
- Do not use it near airplanes or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the

CAUTION

detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.

- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

The mechanical key is separately placed in the handover gift box. Please keep it properly for use.

Bluetooth Digital Key

- Use the Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- Download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- For vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also

connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.

- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.
- For a better experience, use the key near the driver seat to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth digital key, ensure that the vehicle network is well connected. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone before using the key, and contact a authorized dealer or service provider if a problem occurs.

NFC Key Card

- The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.
- Hold your NFC card close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- Get into the vehicle, place the NFC key at the NFC sign to obtain the vehicle start permission.

CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charging area in the vehicle (see ***P196***).
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that can block electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- To ensure vehicle safety, handle it with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of a new card.

NFC Digital Key

NFC digital key is a function provided by DENZA. With this function, you can register mobile phones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock and start the vehicle safely and conveniently.

- The following conditions must be met before using the mobile phone NFC vehicle key. Please ensure that all conditions are met before opening the operation:
  - Complete the owner authentication in BYD App.
  - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your mobile phone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital keys (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for supported devices).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

You can activate it through BYD App and locomotive setting mode. Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into Park with a smart key.

- Via BYD App:
  - Please go to the mobile App store to download BYD App, and complete registration and login. Tap "Digital Key" to enable the function according to the instructions.
- Via infotainment touchscreen:
  - To activate the key, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ .
  - Digital key path: ⚙ → Window and lock → Digital key.

NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for others). You can activate the key through:

- Synchronize data to Apple Watch after the successful activation on iPhone:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via Watch App:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch,
  - open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Enable the NFC function of your smartphone or wearable device before using the NFC digital key. Here is how to use:

- To unlock or lock the vehicle, position the NFC antenna area of the smartphone or wearable device near the NFC sign on the driver side mirror. Consult the manufacturer for the NFC antenna area of your device.
- To authorize vehicle start, place the smartphone or wearable device at the NFC sign inside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- After authorization with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly. If the vehicle is not started in time, place the mobile phone or wearable device inside the vehicle again to obtain the permission.

Removing the NFC digital key

You can delete it through the following ways:

- To remove the digital key from BYD App:
  - Open the BYD app, navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to be removed, and enter the password to remove it.

- Remove digital key via the infotainment touchscreen:
  - With a smart key, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Digital key** to delete the key according to the instructions.
- To remove the digital key from the wallet App:
  - Open the Wallet on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it according to the instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

- Some smartphone and wearable device models do not support NFC digital keys.

Digital key Plus

Digital key Plus is an upgraded version of BYD digital key. You can add the digital key Plus to your phone or wearable device and safely and easily unlock, lock, and enter driving mode by bringing the device close to, away from, or into the vehicle. Digital key Plus requires a mobile phone or wearable device to support ultra-wide band and be compatible with BYD vehicles.

Activate digital key Plus

- Download BYD APP in mobile APP store, and complete registration and login. Tap **Digital Key** to enable the function according to the instructions. Before activating the digital key Plus, observe the following conditions:
  - The vehicle supports digital key Plus;
  - BYD App has been registered and opened;
  - The phone supports BYD digital key Plus (please refer to the user manual or consult the dealer for the specific supported device model);
  - The network of the mobile phone and the vehicle is in good condition.

Use digital key Plus

- Get close to unlock:
  - The vehicle can be unlocked by taking the device with the added digital key Plus near the vehicle. This function can be turned on and off in the BYD App and in the digital key settings of the vehicle multimedia.
- Starting the vehicle:
  - Take the device with digital key Plus into the vehicle, step on the brake and press the start button at the same time to start the vehicle safely.

Share digital key Plus

- Through the mobile wallet application, the digital key Plus can be shared to other supported devices, and the shared devices can not be shared again.

Remove digital key Plus

- The digital key Plus can be selected and removed in the BYD App digital key menu. To remove the key, you need to enter a 6-digit operation password.

Transfer the digital key Plus to a new device

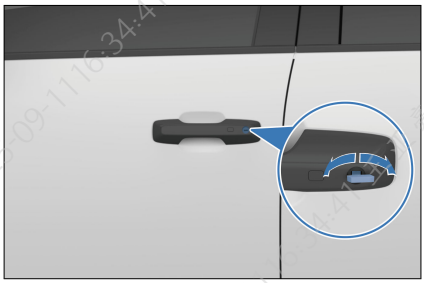
- When you log in to a BYD account on a new phone, the digital key Plus is not automatically bound to the new device. You can enter the digital key menu, select the corresponding owner's key, click the "key transfer" button to remove the key on the original device and re-open it on the new device. The key transfer needs to enter a 6-digit operation password.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole of the driver's door handle, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.



CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational when pulled twice consecutively even when the vehicle is powered off.
- Given the electronic child protection locks equipped, the rear doors can be opened with the interior handles only when the child protection locks are disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the turn signals will not flash, and the horn will sound once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (the DOOR function can be activated) will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in vehicle search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters another vehicle search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

REMINDER

- To enable or disable key unlock/lock/closing window functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All the doors are locked. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.

- If a door, the hood or the trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the front door microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows. (To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.)

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key*

Locking doors:

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the effective NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.

Unlocking doors:

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.

- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:
  - The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in four minutes, while this will be disabled after legal locking.
- For NFC key (smart phone) setup instructions, see ***P52*** for details.

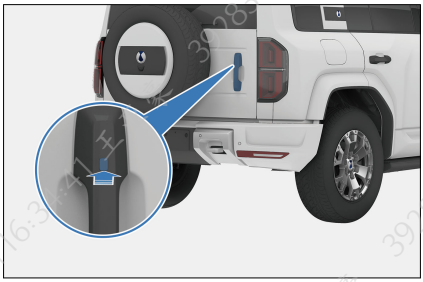
Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

Opening the trunk with smart key

- Press the "Back Door Open" button on the smart key for a short time, and press the button again within 1s after releasing. The back door can be opened for more than 1s. At this time, the turn signal lamp will flash twice.

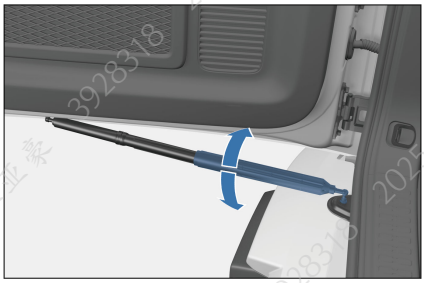
Opening the trunk with exterior switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the microswitch on the back door and pull out the back door to open.
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with a valid smart key, press the microswitch on the back door and pull out the back door to open.



Keep the back door hover open

- When the back door is fully opened, the back door can be unlocked without limit stop.
- As shown in the figure, rotate the locking sheath clockwise to unlock the no-limit stopper of the back door; rotate the locking sheath counterclockwise to lock the no-limit stopper of the back door.



CAUTION

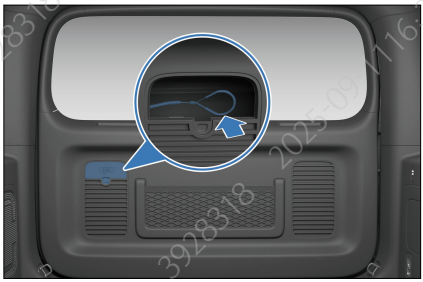
- When opening the back door, do not use too much force, otherwise the back door will be easily damaged.
- To close the back door, it is necessary to rotate the back door stopper sheath to the unlocking state.
- When the back door is frozen or covered by ice and snow under low temperature, please do not pull the back door by force. At this time, adjust the heating of the air conditioner, and try to open the back door after the temperature inside the vehicle rises. In case of emergency, try to open the back door after clearing the snow and using warm water to loosen and melt the ice.
- Do not install, hang or paste any ornaments, or step on or place heavy objects on the back door without a limit stop.
- It is not recommended to refit or install the back door, otherwise the reliability of the relevant parts of the back door may be reduced due to the increase of weight and other reasons, resulting in poor back door holding system, difficulty in opening the back door, abnormal driving noise, sheet

CAUTION

metal cracking, deformation and other unpredictable problems.

Emergency Trunk Releasing from the Inside

There is an emergency unlocking cover just on the right of the trunk lock. To open the trunk in an emergency, open the cover, and then pull the emergency unlocking rope and apply outward force to the trunk at the same time.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury and even death, make sure to observe the following precautions when operating the trunk:
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.

WARNING

- Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
- Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure. The lid may start closing before fully opening.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P79*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Open all doors other than the driver's door, insert the mechanical key into the door's keyhole and turn the key clockwise about 60°. You can then lock the doors by closing them.

2. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See ***P55*** in this Chapter.)
4. Close the driver's door.
5. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

Unlocking

1. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it

can go, return it to the initial position, and pull it out.

2. Pull the door handle again to open the driver's door.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the rest of the doors.

REMINDER

- Be careful not to turn the key too hard and distort or snap the key.

Automatic Window Closing

- To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Auto Windows Closing**.

Automatic window closing upon vehicle locking

- When the "Auto Window Closing After Locking" is enabled, if the ignition is switched off, the driver's door is opened, and the hood, trunk, and all doors are closed, press the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.

Automatic window closing on rainy days

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle ignition is on, all windows close automatically if the wiper sensor senses a certain amout of rain.

  The enabled function works only once, and then works again after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the valid smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (see ***P55*** and ***P56*** in this chapter).

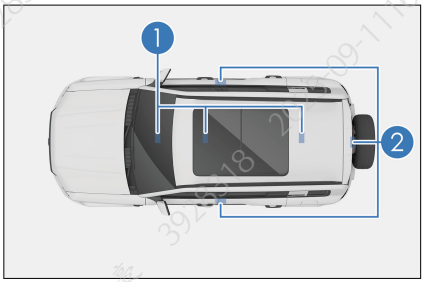
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (see ***P115*** in this chapter)

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna

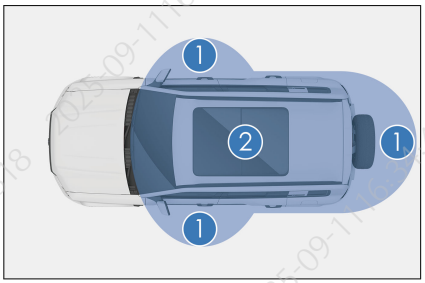


Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered key fob is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about 1 m ± 20 cm from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a two-way radio, mobile phone or other communication devices.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, use the mechanical key in the smart key to lock/unlock the driver's door, or lock/unlock all doors with the wireless remote control function.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster lights up, and the instrument cluster displays the message "Smart key power is low. Please replace the battery as soon as possible", the battery of the key may be exhausted.
  - The vehicle is started repeatedly in a short time. Please wait for 10 seconds and start the vehicle again.
- If the PEPS system cannot work normally due to system fault, take all smart keys to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the key fob in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

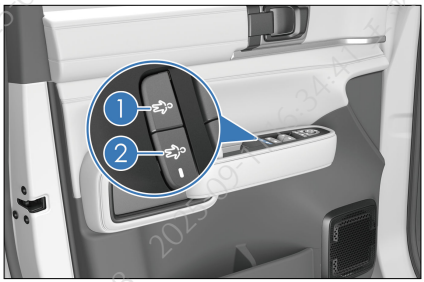
Electronic Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Child protection lock for the rear left door

② Child protection lock for the rear right door

Press the left/right child protection lock button to disable the left/right rear window switch and the interior door handle. To open the door, use the exterior handle.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Rear seats cannot be folded in with the vehicle running.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.

WARNING

- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or during emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, you and your passengers could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injury to the neck or other parts; or you and your passenger may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.

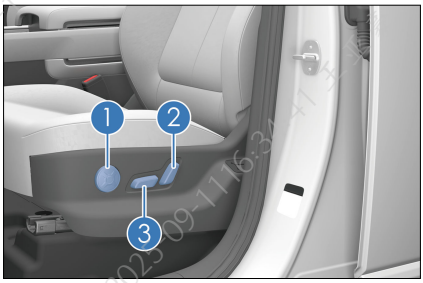
CAUTION

- When folding seats, make sure no seat belt is damaged.
- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.
- While adjusting a seat, do not let it hit against any passenger or the luggage.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Front seat adjustment includes seatback angle adjustment, position adjustment, lumbar support adjustment*, and massage adjustment. The front passenger's seat does not support cushion angle adjustment. Choose the following adjustments according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



① Lumbar support adjustment switch*

The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine.

- Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
- Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.

Seat massage adjustment switch*

- The massage button is at the center of the lumbar support adjustment button. Press it to start or stop massage. You can also enable or disable massage on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Massage cannot be used with lumbar support activated. When the massage is activated, the direction buttons work for massage adjustment; otherwise, they work for lumbar support adjustment. When using the massage function, press any key of the direction key for more than 2 seconds, and the massage function will end.
- In massage mode, the up and down buttons can be used to switch massage patterns, and the left and right buttons to adjust the massage intensity.

Switching massage patterns does not alter massage intensity.

- Your last massage pattern and intensity choices are remembered.
- The massage mode sequence is "Relax → Loosen → Stretch → Pulse → Wave". Press the "Up" button to switch according to the massage sequence, and press the "Down" button to switch in reverse order. The massage mode can be switched circularly.
- The massage mode has three intensity levels, with the default intensity set to level 2. Pressing the forward button and backward button switches the intensity to level 3 and level 1 respectively. Once the intensity reaches level 3 or level 1, further presses of the same button will not trigger any adjustment. These levels do not circulate.
- The massage mode automatically ends 15 minutes after the last adjustment. To continue, enable the seat massage switch again or press the seat massage button or activate the massage via the infotainment touchscreen.

② Seatback angle adjustment

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

③ Seat position adjustment

Seat position adjustment includes forward/backward adjustment, cushion angle adjustment*, and height adjustment.

- Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

REMINDER

- The backrest angle of the rear seat can be manually adjusted by one angle.

Memory System*

Memory setting controls

Users can set the memory switch location by the infotainment touchscreen → → Seats, there are three memory gears.

Memory setting function

- Memory setting conditions
  - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
  - The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold any position button on the infotainment system seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded, the infotainment system prompts "Location saved" and the memory setting finishes.

- Briefly press one of the multimedia system seat memory switch positions to restore the previous memory position.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- With the gearshift lever in the "P" position, pressing the memory system switch enables the driver's seat memory system to perform memory wake-up, if:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:
  - Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
  - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Folding Rear Seats

- Flipping and lowering the seatback
  - Pull the cord to straighten the seatback.
  - Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the followings when folding the seats:
  - Do not put the seatback down with the vehicle running.
  - Do not fold the seats with the vehicle running.
  - Make sure the second-row seats are fully locked before driving.
- The seatback adjustment handle and folding cord cannot be operated at the same time. Straighten the seatback and reset the cord if there is a mis-operation.

Seat Ventilation System

Seat ventilation system

- To access the seat ventilation interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen → .

- Tap "Drop-down" on the homepage of the infotainment touchscreen to operate the seat ventilation* setting button.

Seat ventilation adjustment

- Ventilated seat: use the ventilation switches to control the ventilation fan, which works in two levels.
  - The initial state of the heating indicator is off.
  - Press the switch to select the operation mode of the seat ventilation in the 1st gear or 2nd gear.
  - Tap **OFF** to stop ventilation.

Head Supports

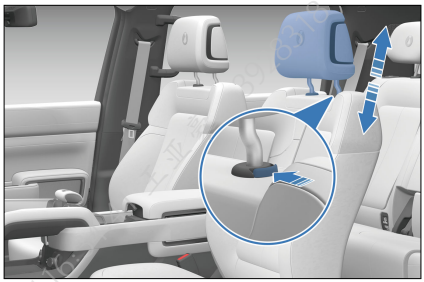
Adjusting Front-Seat Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



REMINDER

- The front head supports cannot be removed.

Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.

- Removing a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.

- Installing a head support

  Move the headrest LOGO forward, then insert the headrest rod into the bushing, press the headrest down to a proper position and release it after hearing the locking sound.

REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

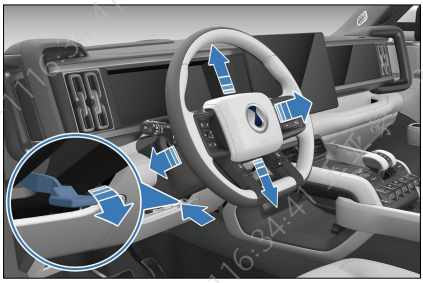
Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle downward to tilt the steering wheel to the desired position, and then restore the handle to the locking position.



REMINDER

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

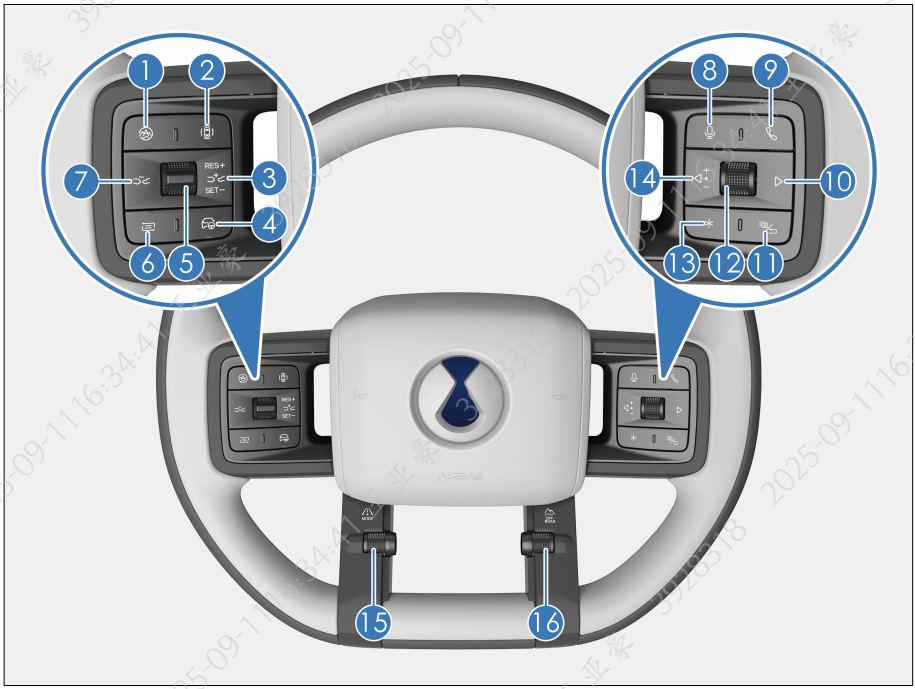
Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The feel of steering assistance varies from person to person, and so do the evaluation and needs for this feel.
- To set the steering mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering assist mode settings can only be changed in ECO, NORMAL, and SPORT mode with LKS off and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Intelligent mode	9	Call
2	Around View Monitoring (AVM)	10	Right
3	Distance +	11	Instrument cluster/Back
4	ICC	12	Scroll button
5	+/Reset or -/Set	13	Custom
6	Driving information	14	Left
7	Distance -	15	Mode
8	Speech recognition	16	Off-road scroll button

The audio control switch is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Left-hand buttons

+/Reset

- Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.

-/Set

- Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance -

- Adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and decrease one level. A total of four levels are available.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Automatic parking button

- Activate/deactivate the automatic parking function button.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P142*** and ***P147*** for details.

Around View Monitoring (AVM)

- Turns panoramic view off if already in panoramic view mode, or on if not in this mode.

Intelligent mode

- Enter/exit intelligent mode.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
- Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
- Press down the button to mute.

Left/Right

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

Call

- Dial/Answer (The audio system is muted after pressing the button.)
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the Call Log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the speech recognition screen.
- Press a second time to exit the screen.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When not on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to select the lower menu items.
- In the bluetooth call interface, press the instrument/return button to end the call.

Custom

- Long press to enter the customization interface, and you can re-customize or cancel the customization.
- Short press to execute the customization function.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Lower scroll button

Mode

- Turn the scroll button to switch between ECO/NORMAL/SPORT modes.

Off-road scroll button

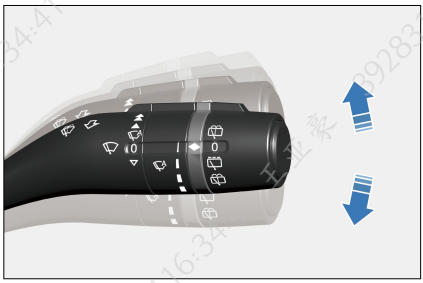
- Turn the scroll button to switch between snow/sand/mud/mountain/rock modes.

Wipers

Wiper Switch

Front Windshield Wipers and Washer

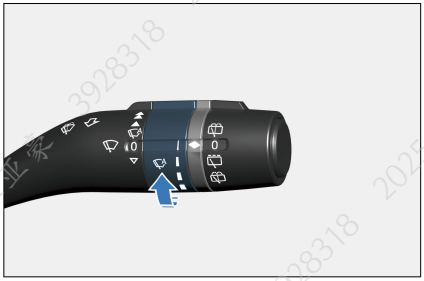
- The lever is used to control the windshield wipers and washer. It has five modes:
  - : Fast
  - : Slow
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers
  - : OFF
  - : Point-wiping (pulling down the lever from and the wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever).



- Push up or pull down the lever to select a mode.
- In slow and fast modes, the wipers operates continuously.
- Pulling down the lever from the position activates the point-wiping mode . The wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever.

Auto wipers/Intermittent

- The rain sensor is located on the front windshield inside the vehicle, in front of the rearview mirror. It automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall.
- To enable the auto wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and enable auto wiper on infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- To use the intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and disable auto wiper on infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- The automatic wiper function has four sensitivity levels. The higher the lever, the higher the sensitivity. When using the automatic wiper function, change the sensitivity by adjusting the toggle based on real-time rain conditions. If the wiper reacts to rain too quickly, reduce the sensitivity; if the wiper reacts to rain too slowly, increase the sensitivity.



WARNING

- With the ignition on and the wiper switch at , touching the glass on the top of the sensor by hand or wiping it with a cloth may cause the wiper to work and thus lead to an accident.

WARNING

- Turn off the automatic mode of wiper during the vehicle washing process, in dry seasons or in rainless weather to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.

CAUTION

- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

REMINDER

- With the wiper handle at , the wiper will perform a wiping action whenever the wiping sensitivity is increased by one shift; when the wiper is turned from OFF to , the wiper will perform a wiping action.

Front windshield washer

Pull up (toward the steering wheel) the wiper switch for the system to only spray water without wiping if pull-up time is short (within 0.5 seconds), or spray water continuously for 10 seconds and wipe it at a low speed if pull-up time is long. Release the wiper switch for the wiper to automatically wipe two times and then return to its original position.

Rear Windshield Wipers and Washer

- Set the wiper switch to to activate the rear windshield wiper; set it to to stop the wiper.

- Set the wiper switch to to activate the rear windshield wiper and washer simultaneously.

- Set the wiper switch to and release it. The wiper will operate twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windshield cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.

Replacing Wiper Blades

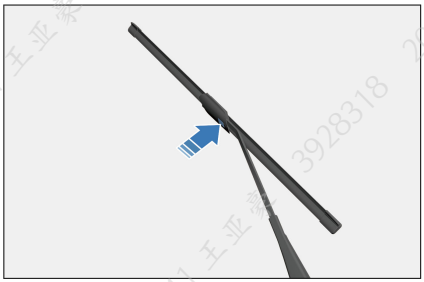
Replacing Wiper Blades

- Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.
- When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front/rear wiper check function on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out for easy maintenance and replacement.

Replacing front wiper

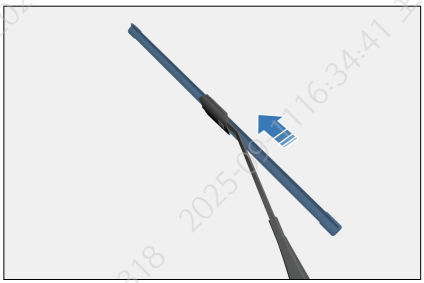
1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.

2. Press the wiper lock button.



3. Hold the clip of the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction.

4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.

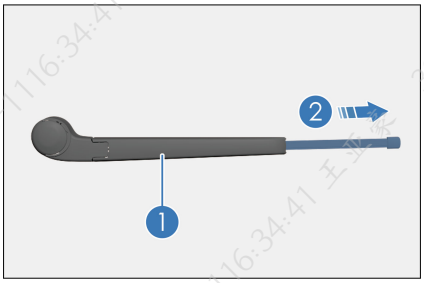


Replacing rear wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm;

2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out vertically along the indicated direction ②.

3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Handle wiper blades with care. Do not push the wiper arm to let the wiper blade straightly strike onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** interface to enable front wiper check. Manually lift the front wipers to prevent them from freezing.

- For wiper blade maintenance, see ***P73***.

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror

- The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror

according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.

- Move the rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.

WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- To avoid the mirror falling off, do not adjust the mirror forcibly if it is stuck.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

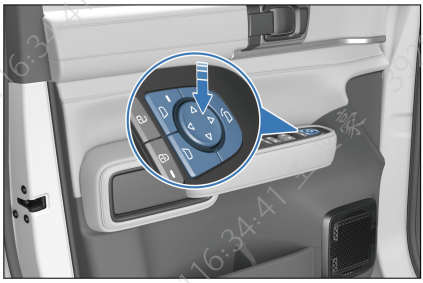
Side Mirrors

Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons

Side mirror adjustment buttons

Left side mirror button

Right side mirror button



Side mirror adjustment control

Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to a right position.

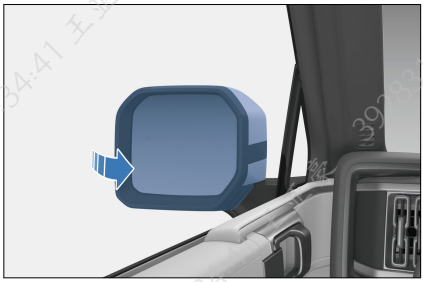
Side mirror folding control

Press this button to fold or expand side mirrors.

Folding Side Mirrors

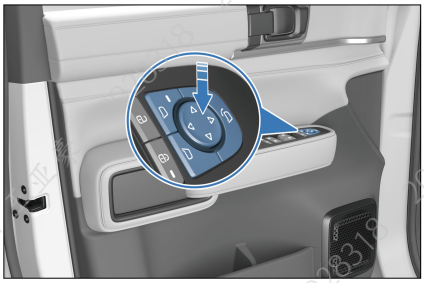
Folding side mirrors manually

- Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the button to fold the side mirrors with power. Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.



Side mirror reversing assist*

- When the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors automatically flip down a certain degree while reversing to provide the driver with a better view.

REMINDER

- For the introduction of the side mirror button, see ***P75***.

Side Mirror Defrosters*

Tap this button, and the heating panel of side mirrors will quickly clear the mirrors.

REMINDER

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.
- Using the side mirror heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrosting button when it is not needed.

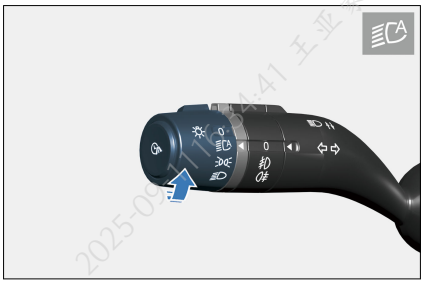
Switches

Light Switches

Set the light switch to 0 to turn off all lights except for daytime running lights.

Auto lights

Set the light switch to . The BCM captures the brightness data from the light intensity sensor to automatically turn the position lights and low beam on or off.

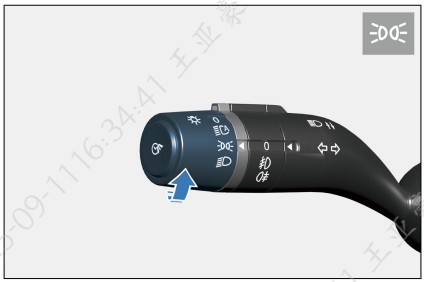


REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Position lights

Set the light switch to to turn on position lights.



Low beam

Set the light switch to to turn on the low beam.

Front fog light

Set the light switch to and rotate the fog light dial to to turn on front fog light.

Rear fog lights

Switch the end knob of the light switch to , and rotate the fog light dial to to turn on rear fog light.

High beam

Set the light switch to and push the light switch lever down (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam.

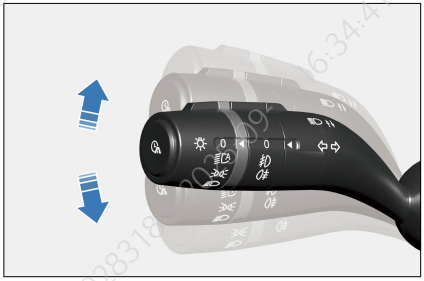
Overtaking light

Pull up the lever (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever for the light switch to

automatically reset. The overtaking light turns off.

Turn signals

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.



- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the lever is released. They will turn off after the turn is complete. Depending on the driver's driving habits, the turn signals may reset after a full turn of the steering wheel.

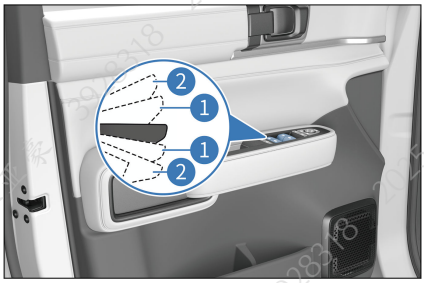
Auto light off

- To activate this feature, To activate this function, set the light switch to or and switch off the vehicle power.
- With the function is activated, the headlight, position light, front fog lights, rear fog light and high beam turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, front fog lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off feature: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is opened, the duration extends to 10 minutes.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK" gear, the window switches can be used to roll up or down windows.
  - Press a window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up a window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down function

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down a certain distance automatically.

When automatic up or anti-pinch function fails

- Follow the steps below to restore the function.
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be restored.

Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for servicing is recommended if the windows' auto up or anti-pinch function fails.

Central Locking

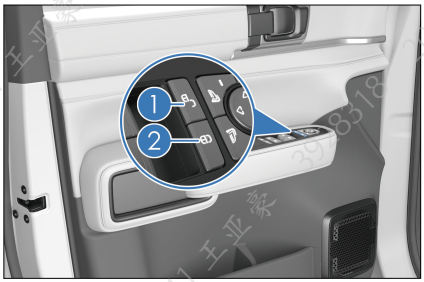
The driver's door is equipped with power door switches. Use them to lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlock

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

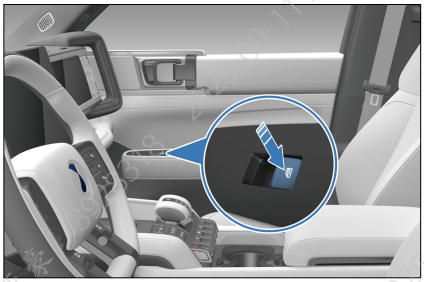
② Lock

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



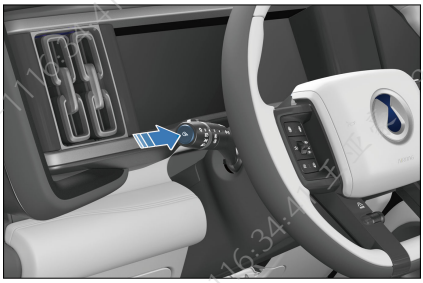
Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side

- When the vehicle is in "OK" gear, use the right front and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



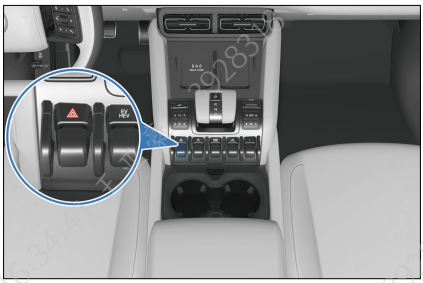
Odometer Switch

- Press the odometer toggle switch to select Total Mileage, Mileage 1, and Mileage 2. The odometer displays the switching status accordingly.
- Press this switch to reset mileages 1 and 2.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



Sunroof Switch

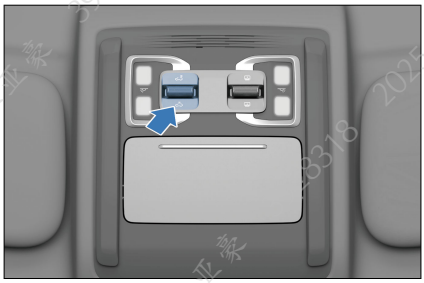
- The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

Opening the sunroof

With the sunroof at any position (except fully open)

- Pull the sunroof switch backward to open the sunroof horizontally:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.

- Gear two is automatic. Pull the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.



With the sunroof at any position (except tilting/opening)

- Press the sunroof switch upward to tilt the sunroof open:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Press the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.

Closing the sunroof

With the sunroof at any position (except fully closed)

- Push the sunroof switch forward to close the sunroof:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Pull the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.

REMINDER

- After desert off-road, it is recommended to clean sunroof guide rail and sealing strip.

Anti-pinch Function

While it is closing, the sunroof/sunshade reopens for a certain distance if anything trapped is detected.

WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing. Serious injury occurs when passengers have their body parts caught in the sunroof.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

CAUTION

- Water may enter the cabin when operating the sunroof after rainy or snowy weather or after washing the vehicle. Wipe it clean with a dry cloth before operating.
- Trying to open the sunroof at outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

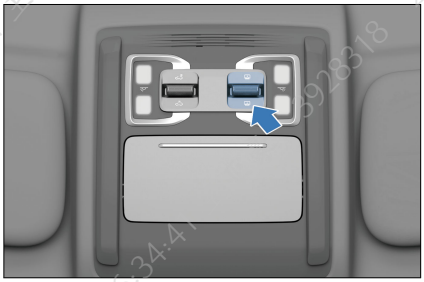
REMINDER

- The sunshade opens automatically when the sunroof is opening. When the sunroof pauses, the sunshade will then pause.

Opening/Closing Sunshade

- Push the switch inward to open the sunshade:

- Gear one is manual. Release during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.
- Gear two is automatic. Push the switch again during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.



- Push the switch forward to close the sunshade:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Push the switch again during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.

Sunshade Anti-pinch

If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

Initialization

With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:

1. Press and hold the sunroof closing switch to make the sunroof move to the fully closed position and keep pressing. The sunroof initialization is then complete.
2. After the sunroof has been initialized and is fully closed, press and hold the sunshade closing switch to make the sunshade run to the fully closed position and keep pressing, and then the sunshade initialization is completed.

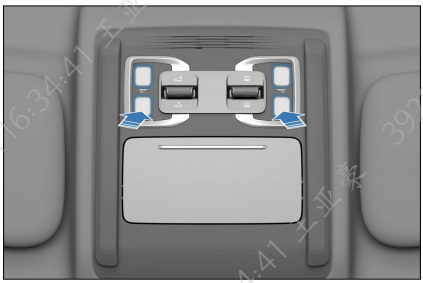
CAUTION

- Do not release the sunroof/ sunshade close button until initialization is complete.

Interior Light Switches

Front interior light switches

- Press the interior light buttons to turn on left/right interior lights. Press again to turn them off.
- Slide down the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the "Convenience" interface, click "Interior light on" to turn on the front interior light, and click "Interior light off" to turn off the front interior light.

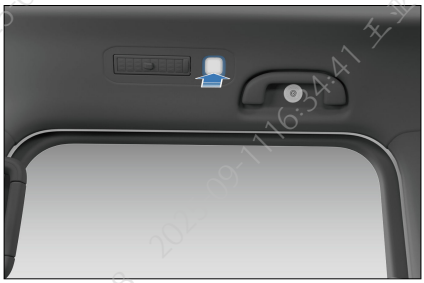


- When the vehicle is not powered off, the "DOOR" switch is turned on, and any door is open, interior lighting switches between high and low brightness with touches on the light switch.
- With the ignition off and "DOOR" gear on, interior lights will go off after the door have remained open for a while. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.

- To select or unselect the DOOR option, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

Rear Interior Light Switches

- With the vehicle in any power mode, press this button to continuously turn on the left/right rear side interior light, press it again to turn off the left/right rear side interior light.
- Slide down the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the "Convenience" interface, click "Indoor light on" to turn on the left/right rear side indoor light, and click "Indoor light off" to turn off the left/right rear side indoor light.



Ambient Lights

The user can go to the setting interface via infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Interior** → **Ambient Light** to control the brightness, colors and area of the ambient light.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death. If you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), confirm before charging with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the device will be affected.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use EV charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the ground cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet meeting safety standards.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

Pre-charging warnings

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, nor damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of the situations above, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- Close the DC charge port cap when AC charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Warnings after charging

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging can be carried out in any power mode, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging to ensure safety. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, pay attention to the followings:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it off. This will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
  - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
  - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobilizer system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.
  - The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.

Precautions before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- With the charge port unlocked, open the port, hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

Precautions during charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging. Do not block the front of the vehicle within half a meter.
- It is normal that when the battery is heating up and working, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high compromise vehicle charging performance:
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, the battery thermal management can improve the low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. These are normal phenomenons.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is better to charge the vehicle in a heated space indoors.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster It is normal that it may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC and charging facilities.

REMINDER

- During the charging process, if the user finds that the charging power of the instrument drops to 0 kW after unlocking with the key, door armrest or door handle, it is a normal phenomenon, and the normal charging will resume after 30 s.

Precautions after charging:

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button*.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Suggestions for using mode 2 charging cable: To stop charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials

may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch* has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	The charging connection switch* is pressed.	If the charging connection switch is pressed, the charging will stop. The charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down.
	The vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check Before Charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Make sure the metal terminals of power plug, socket, charging connector, or port are not loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
  - Make sure the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is not visibly stained or damp. In any of the event, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

Before using the Mode 2 charging cable to charge:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P86*** in this section.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P87*** in this section.

Equipment

- This Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. Connect the plug to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- Connect the vehicle to a socket that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

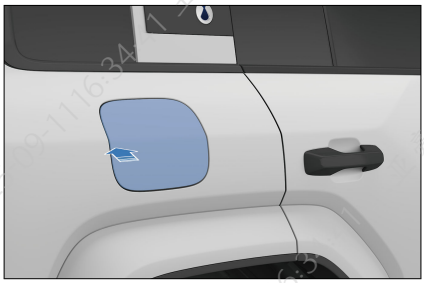
- It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.

REMINDER

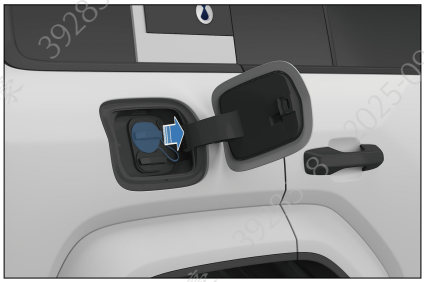
- When using mode 2 charging cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

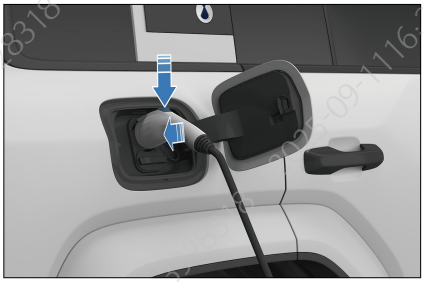
1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle unlocked, power off the vehicle, and press the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle to open the door.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap*, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket. The power indicator of the cable becomes solid red.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Operate according to the actual configurations: While pressing and holding the lock button* on the charging connector, plug the connector into the port, and release the lock button*. Or directly and correctly plug the charging connector into the charge port.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. The charging indicator of the Mode 2 charging cable flashes green.

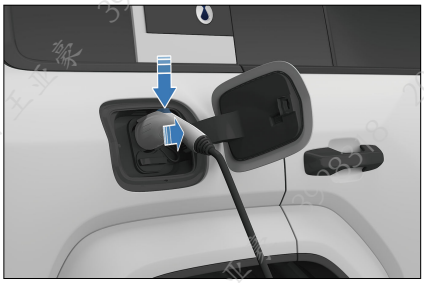


- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P95*** for the configuration process.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - If the immobilizer of the electrical lock is deactivated, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
   - If the immobilizer is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press

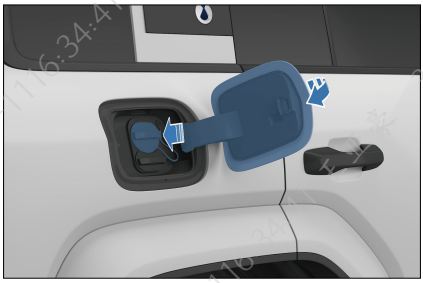
the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.



REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the smart key (when charging the vehicle with ignition off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the anti-theft system is enabled, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P101*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P102*** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charge port door.
5. Store the charging equipment properly.



Using AC Charging Piles*

1. Equipment

- Single-phase AC charging box*
  - Charge with a charging box. For the use of its equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - The single-phase AC charging box It consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- Single-phase AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.

2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door:
  - Open the charge port cap on the right side of the vehicle, and then open the upper port door (see instructions for mode 2 charging).
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
- Charging settings:

- Skip this step if an single-phase AC charging box or a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
- For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.

- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P95*** for the configuration process.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions for mode 2 charging.
- Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for mode 2 charging).
- Store the equipment properly.
  - Place the charger at the designated position in the AC charging pile/box (if used).

Using DC Charging Piles

Before using DC charging piles:

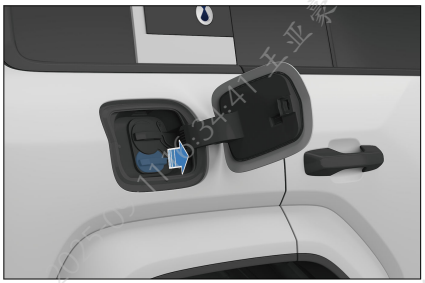
- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P86*** in this section.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read and observe the charging instructions ***P87*** in this section.

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charger.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle unlocked, power off the vehicle, and press the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle, the charging port opens automatically.
2. Open the charge port cap:
   - The plug cover of the charging seat opens the AC charging port cover from top to bottom and then opens the DC charging port protective cover.
   - Make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector of the DC charging piles into the DC charge port and lock it.

4. Start charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
   - In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Remove the charging connector.
3. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
4. Organize the charging equipment:
   - After DC charging with a charging pile, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in the designated position properly.

CAUTION

- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact customer service of the charging pile in a timely manner.
- In case of high-temperature DC charging, the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, and the charging performance may degrade, resulting in an extended charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.

Charge/Discharge Indicator*

- The charging/discharging indicator is located in the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle body, indicating the charging/discharging state in green, yellow, red, blue, and white respectively.
- If the charging/discharging connector is not connected, the indicator remains solid white for a period of time. If the vehicle is locked during use, the indicator is on for a period of time and then turn off. When the vehicle is unlocked, the indicator lights up again.

Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Lighting	Charge port opened (no connector connected)	Solid white	

Charging	Charge/discharge initialization process	Flashing yellow	
	Charging being scheduled/ charging paused	Solid yellow	
Charging	Charging in progress	Flashing green	
	Charging complete	Solid green	
Discharging	Discharging in progress	Flashing blue	
Fault	Charge/Discharge fault	Solid red	

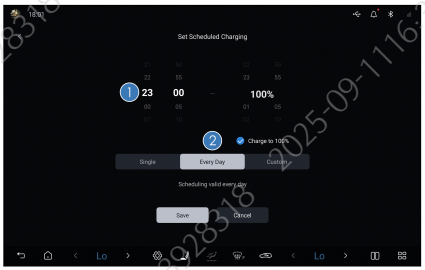
Smart Charging

- You can access the setting screen either through the central infotainment system or voice control:
  - You can access this function by touching the app Smart Charging on the central infotainment system.
  - Enter the intelligent charging interface by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.
  - Say "Hi BYD, start smart/scheduled charging", "Hi BYD, I want to make smart/scheduled charging" or "Hi BYD, please help me start smart/ scheduled charging" to quickly enter.
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the Back ⮌ or Setting ⚙ button or calling the DENZA Assistant.
  - Say "Hi BYD, end smart charging/ scheduled charging" or "Hi BYD, exit smart charging/scheduled charging" to quickly exit.

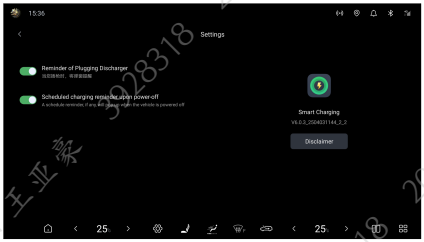
Smart charging settings

① Charging start and end time

② Repeat cycle



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON, set the charging end time ① and repeat cycle ②, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen of the charging start time. You can switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the smart charging setting icon to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert.



CAUTION

- The smart charging function is developed for DENZA's certified slow AC charging equipment only. Please disable this function when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by DENZA. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports reservation from the charging pile.

REMINDER

- The smart charging function is only dedicated for AC charging piles certified by DENZA. If you need to use this function via a public charging facility, please make sure that the facility supports vehicle-terminal reservation.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment touchscreen still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Discharging Equipment

- This vehicle is equipped with external discharging feature. External discharging refers to vehicle-to-load (V2L) discharging.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P86*** for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the pickup bed, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.

WARNING

- Never use the device when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.
- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to ***P87***.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range. This function is recommended when the vehicle has a higher SOC.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the discharging connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.
- DENZA's original discharging connection device is required, and the vehicle discharging function may not work properly with non-DENZA products.

Discharging

Check before discharging

- Discharging safety warnings are as those given in "Charging Instructions". Carefully read and observe these warnings to prevent serious personal injury.
- Discharging precautions are as those given in "Charging Instructions". Carefully read and observe these precautions to prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle.
- Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - Ensure the discharge connection device casing is not cracked, no cable is worn and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.

Equipment description

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) discharge device: consists of a discharge connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.
- Its specifications shall comply with local standards. See discharge connection device for details.

Starting discharging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
   - Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.

- See ***P90*** to unlock the charge port door and open the port door and cap.

2. Connect the discharge equipment:
   - Firmly connect the discharge connection equipment to the charge port.
3. Start discharging:
   - After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
   - After the equipment is connected, discharging will begin and related information will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

1. End discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (which is not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharge connection device:
   - With doors unlocked, unplug the connector from the charge port. For discharging connectors with a mechanical button, press the button before unplugging.
   - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P90***).
3. Organize the equipment:
   - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to access the "Vehicle To Load" setting screen.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle the "Vehicle To Load" on or off.

  - When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition off, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition on, it will automatically drive the engine to generate electricity without previous settings.

  - Tap the Settings button for single discharge to set the desired discharge duration on the corresponding screen.

CAUTION

- Discharging cannot be toggled on without connecting the connector. In that case, when tapped, the

CAUTION

Vehicle To Load button will be grayed out after a while, which is a normal phenomenon.

- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC setting

Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, slide down the shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **SOC Settings**.

- When the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, to make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce the fuel consumption, a lower target SOC is recommended.
- When the destination is not convenient for vehicle charging, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
- For a better driving and riding experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the target SOC according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- SAVE mode is related to the vehicle energy management priority:
  - SAVE: In the HEV mode, set the mandatory power protection to keep the priority power, and the SOC is as close as possible to the set value.

CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

In-situ Recharge

- It is used to meet the target power demand by starting the engine to supplement power when the vehicle is in situ. When the user needs to store more electricity in situ to meet the subsequent long-term electricity demand, such as outdoor camping, rescue, or better power performance in special terrains, the user can control the in-situ recharge power and the target SOC of power supply through this function.

- Enabling the function
  - Enable this function by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.
  - The vehicle is in the "OK" gear; the instrument displays the HEV mode; the vehicle is in Park; the set target SOC for power compensation is greater than current electric quantity; the function is enable to start.
- Function settings
  - Users can select low-power or high-power modes for in-situ recharge according to their needs.
- Activating the function
  - The instrument displays "the vehicle is being recharged in situ, please keep the surrounding environment well ventilated".

WARNING

- After the function is turned on, the engine will start and generate a certain amount of heat and exhaust gas. Please ensure that the vehicle is far away from flammable materials (withered grass, etc.) and in an open and well-ventilated environment to avoid potential safety hazards in the process of power supply.

CAUTION

- In extreme cold, high temperature, plateau and other special environments, the in-situ recharge power may decrease. Please refer to the power displayed by the instrument in real time.

CAUTION

- A certain amount of fuel will be consumed in the process of in-situ recharge. Please use this function reasonably according to your expected mileage.

REMINDER

- The function will exit when the vehicle is powered off, switched to the non-HEV mode, switched to the non-Park gear, or the target SOC for power replenishment is lower than current electric quantity.
- The function will automatically turn off when the target battery SOC is reached.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Electricity Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity. Controlling the accelerator pedal depth can generate electricity with different power.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.

Regenerative Braking Settings

- There are two modes of energy feedback intensity: standard and larger. Users can select the corresponding energy regeneration mode according to driving habits by going to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.
- The factory default target value is always maintained if not set by the user.
- It has the memory function, and the setting value will be defaulted every time after power-on.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. This function is disabled by default. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to enable the charging port immobilizer system.

- When the function is enabled or in the intelligent mode, you can unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
  - The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Operating by Keys or Central Locking	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charge pause (30 s)	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Unlocking	/	Yes	Pull out the charger within 30s.

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Operating by Keys or Central Locking	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charge pause (30 s)	Charging Connector Removable or Not
2	Disabled	/	Yes	/	Yes
		Unlocking	No	Yes	Pull out the charger within 30s.
3	Intelligent	/	Yes	/	Yes
		Unlocking	No	Yes	Pull out the charger within 30s.

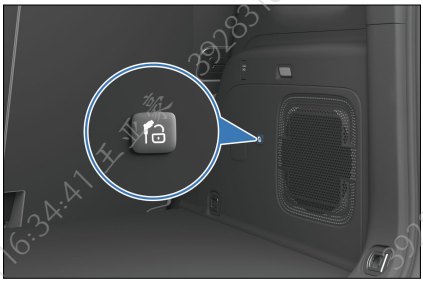
REMINDER

- The connector needs to be pulled out within 30 seconds after it is unlocked. Otherwise, the electric lock will lock again.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When this system is enabled or in the intelligent mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- Please close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer, unlock the charge port manually.

1. Open the trunk. There is a dragline for the charging connector on the right side panel inside the trunk.
2. Unlock the charging connector by unlocking the emergency cable latch and pulling the emergency cable.
3. Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



REMINDER

- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new cars with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period

REMINDER

of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle checks. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- If the vehicle is to be left sit for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If this period will be over three months, charge the vehicle fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up and heats the battery to speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Any organization or individual who illegally disassemble or dismantle the battery shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents so caused.

CAUTION

- When the high-voltage battery fails, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery works normally at temperatures between -35℃ and 60℃.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, and the after-sales service provider will help the recycling organization assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. After the recycling is confirmed, the vehicle power battery will be disassembled by the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
3. The wasted battery will be returned to a recycling organization for further handling.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

- The low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the low-voltage battery is low, it may be charged by the high-voltage battery or the engine automatically to increase its battery life.

REMINDER

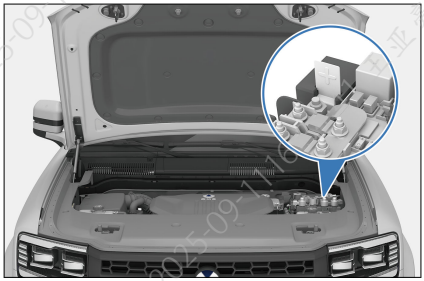
- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

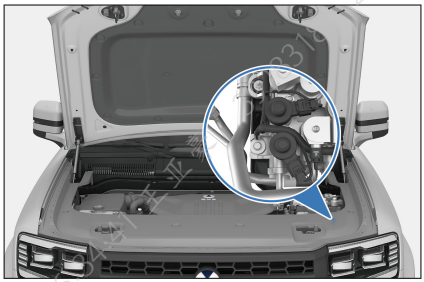
- **Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch**
  - The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key. At this time, press the microswitch on the driver's door handle (See ***P56***) to activate the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.
- Wake-up by jump starting
  - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V

power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low. The instrument cluster may display "The low-voltage battery SOC is low, and the vehicle is going to be powered off", and the vehicle will become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.

- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the under-hood PDB, the positive electrode of the front compartment distribution box is as shown in the illustration.



- The negative electrode of the electric ignition is located under the front compartment lock catch and the front compartment trim cover, and the position is as shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above steps, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.

WARNING

- Do not connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start before it is powered on. Otherwise, the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- If the low-voltage battery SOC is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Please carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery and the low-voltage maintenance switch connector before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that the jump starting be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-hood PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

Smart Charging

When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated to prolong the use of low-

voltage battery. When the power battery is low, the vehicle may start the engine to generate electricity to meet the needs of intelligent charging function. This model is provided with the smart charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

CAUTION

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After locking the vehicle, if the high-voltage battery charge level drops to the point of triggering the engine to generate power, it will consume a small amount of fuel and emit a little exhaust.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
  - During the break-in period, the proportion of driving in HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) shall not be less than 50%.

Trailer Towing

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. DENZA does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Comment
Maximum towing capacity (braked) (kg)	2500	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked) (kg)	750	Maximum total towing capacity allowed when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load (kg)	175	Maximum vertical load allowed on ball joint

1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 250 kPa and rear tires to 250 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer, or from failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

Speed control

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolonging the high-voltage battery usage:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% - 60% which is not too high or too low, and close the doors and windows.
- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every three months, and then charge it to 40% - 60% for storage.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid driving the vehicle continuously for a long time; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the fault prompt.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

WARNING

- Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

CAUTION

- If the battery meter drops to 0, the vehicle must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by DENZA warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's

CAUTION

available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards.

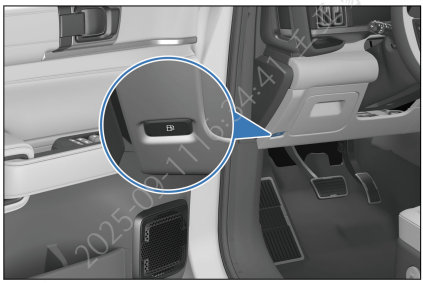
CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

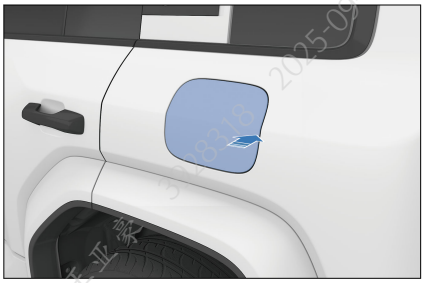
Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn the vehicle off.

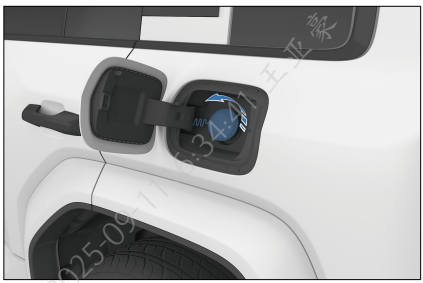
1. Press the refueling button. The instrument cluster prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure is being released. Please wait." It prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure released. Please refuel." when the release is complete.



2. Press the fuel door, and the door automatically opens to a certain angle.

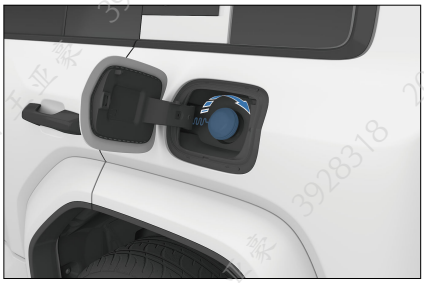


3. Open the fuel door, and rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.



- Connect the fuel tank cap to the fuel door with a cord to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel door.

4. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.



WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to add fuel outdoors.
  - Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
  - Do not remove the fuel tank cap immediately when opening it. In hot weather, if the fuel tank cap is suddenly removed, fuel under pressure may spray out of the port, causing injury.
  - After refueling, wipe up any spilled fuel immediately.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule, such as burning fuel.

CAUTION

- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel door is closed in time after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not tightened, may lights up on the instrument cluster.
- If the fuel adding is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, please close the door, open it, and add fuel again, otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.

- Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
- The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C to reduce fuel consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
- Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
- Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
- Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
- When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
- Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
- Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed to save fuel.
- Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- Use the glove box, interior panel and backrest pockets to place small items. Large items are to be placed in the trunk.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

WARNING

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Trunk

Luggage anchors (4 pcs)

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seat backs.

Roof Rack

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption

and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.

- Do not open the sunroof with luggage on the roof rack, or you may risk damaging the sunroof and other components with the beam or the luggage.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof rack evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load of the roof rack is: 75 kg in dynamic state, and 300 kg in static state. Among them, the load includes the weight of the beam, luggage frame and other accessories mounted on the rack.

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.
- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been in an accident that may damage the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
  - Select the "face/foot level" mode.
  - The fan speed is set at "high RPM".

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, light fixtures, etc., may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the exhaust system components rises after a long-term drive.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery and the low-voltage maintenance switch connector before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When

abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.

- Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.

- Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the engine compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There is limited comburent in the engine compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

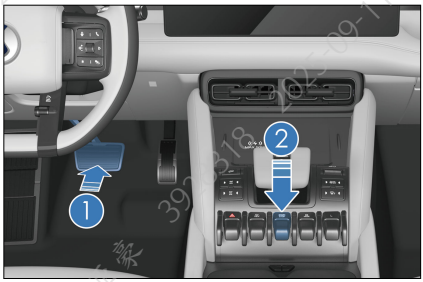
REMINDER

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

- Carry the valid smart key or place the NFC key at the indicated NFC position* inside the vehicle.
- Press the START/STOP button ② while pressing the brake pedal ①.
- The vehicle is ready to drive when the OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.



REMINDER

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

Remote Start

- Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals flash three times.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button on the smart key. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off

- Enable or disable smart power-on/power-off by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**. This function is disabled by factory default.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key/microswitch/phone NFC/BYD App, after the driver's door is opened for the first time, the vehicle is powered on.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, phone NFC, BYD App, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or NFC digital key.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.

REMINDER

- If you unlock and access the vehicle by opening a door other than the driver's door, after you powering on and then off, opening the driver's door does not power on the vehicle.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the hood is open.
- To prevent false triggering, using BYD App can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the instrument cluster and infotainment system lighting need a certain time for self-check, wait patiently for a few seconds until the instrument cluster displays normally and then use the vehicle.

Driving

- During driving, energy is recovered by the regenerative brake when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The regenerative braking intensity can be set on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - **Standard**: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor

controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.

- High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.

- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.
- The set regenerative braking intensity will be memorized. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- Do not setting the regenerative braking intensity while driving at a high speed. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be driven to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: Check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and check any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park

the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Kick-Down Function*

- While driving, when the vehicle is climbing a hill or needs to accelerate quickly, press the accelerator pedal to near its end. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, causing the engine RPM to rise and providing greater power to the vehicle.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Driving Mode

Off-road Mode

Off-road mode includes snow, sand, mud, mountain and rock modes, and there are three ways to switch:

1. Driving mode App: Switch to enter the off-road mode by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → driving mode App.
2. Off-road scroll button: Toggle the off-road scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel to switch the corresponding off-road mode.
3. Voice control: "Hi, BYD, turn the XX mode." "

Snow mode

- Snow mode is recommended for roads with a firm roadbed and a layer of loose and slippery materials such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel. The vehicle improves the four-wheel grip by optimizing its towing, driving, and manipulation features in slippery conditions.

WARNING

- Do not open L function on paved surfaces.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.

CAUTION

- The adhesion coefficient of snow-covered roads is low, so drive

CAUTION

with caution and slow down for corners.

Sand mode

- Sand mode is recommended for roads that are soft, dry, or easily pressed by wheels (e.g., sand and deep snow). The vehicle optimizes the driving force and saves battery power for better running on the sand.
- Sand ABS is only applicable to the soft road surface of sand type. Compared with ordinary ABS, the wheel locking time is longer and the braking distance is shortened during emergency braking.
  - The user can enable or disable sand ABS by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → Driving mode App → Sand mode.
  - Sand ABS is off by factory default and does not have a memory function.
  - After the switch is turned on, if it needs to be turned off, please click the switch button again or exit the sand mode.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- It is forbidden to turn on sand ABS on paved roads.

CAUTION

- For desert driving, it is recommended to adjust the tire pressure to 120 kpa (1.2 bar).
- In sand mode, the vehicle automatically sets a higher target

CAUTION

SOC. Make sure the vehicle is fully charged before a high-intensity off-road trip.

- When parking on a slope, adjust the front of the vehicle to face downhill to reduce the possibility of rollover.
- When driving on sand, keep as many wheels as possible running on the firmest surface.
- After driving over sandy roads, check the braking system and ensure that it is normal. Clean the debris such as sand and dirt at the bottom of the vehicle to prevent vehicle failure.
- After each desert off-road trip, it is recommended to check the following parts in time and maintain the vehicle or send it for repair as needed:
  - Engine oil filter element
  - Air conditioning filter
  - Electronic fan
  - Tire
  - Lighting
  - Brake pedal, brake pad, and brake disc
  - Charge port door and fuel door
  - Electric Pedal*
  - Air filter element
  - Door hinges
  - Radiator
  - Locks, latches, and interior buttons

CAUTION

- Supercharger pressure end lines and impellers

Mud mode

- Mud mode is recommended for roads that are muddy, deeply rutted, soft and uneven, or where the vehicle is prone to skidding and getting stuck. The vehicle optimizes the driving force output and the ESC parameters for better passing through these roads.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.

CAUTION

- Drive at a constant speed and avoid stopping midway in the mud.
- Before driving through a mud pit, get off the vehicle to check the depth of the pit and whether there are any hidden obstacles.
- Be sure to keep a sufficient safe distance from the vehicles ahead because the vehicle braking distance increases when driving on wet or muddy roads.
- When driving on mud, be careful of sudden changes in speed or direction.
- Clean your vehicle after driving through the mud. Otherwise, the excessive mud in the vehicle will lead to vehicle imbalance, causing damage.

Mountain mode

- Mountain mode is recommended for roads with mixed soil and stones or potholes, such as rugged mountain roads, hills, gravel roads, etc. The vehicle improves the off-road driving safety by intelligently adjusting the driving force output.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Drive uphill and downhill in a straight line to prevent lateral skidding and rollover.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal too deeply may cause tires to slip, spin, or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Rock mode

- Rock mode is suitable for the road surface piled with stones or the road condition with large drop between stones. The vehicle automatically locks the rear differential lock of the vehicle configuration, and intelligently adjusts the torque distribution ratio and body stability control system parameters in real time according to the terrain changes, so as to ensure the safety and trafficability of off-road driving.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Please be sure to keep a sufficient safe distance from the vehicle in front to minimize vehicle damage and personal risk.
- When crossing the rocky road, it may cause the vehicle to

WARNING

turn sharply. Please control the steering wheel carefully.

- Please place your thumb on the outer ring of the steering wheel and keep it facing up to avoid hand injury during severe turbulence.

CAUTION

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please drive carefully and slowly through rocky terrain at low speed.
- Please place your thumb on the outer ring of the steering wheel and keep it facing up to avoid hand injury during severe turbulence.

Intelligent mode

- Intelligent mode has certain terrain recognition and off-road capability, and the vehicle will intelligently adjust torque distribution and limited slip control according to the road characteristics. If you want a professional off-road experience, please switch to the corresponding terrain mode.
- How to use
  - Enter the intelligent mode by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → Driving mode App or by clicking the intelligent mode button on the steering wheel.

L Function

- L function can be used for cross-country, getting out of trouble, climbing on steep slopes, traction rescue and other states. Under the L function, the vehicle will increase the low-speed torque output, accompanied by the increase of energy consumption, noise and tire wear.
- How to use
  - Press the L button to enter or exit the L function. When the L function is switched on, the L status is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- Shift gear only when:
  - Vehicle speed is still.
  - The rear wheels are not slipping.
  - The differential lock has been locked or unlocked.

CAUTION

- Do not enter and exit the L function frequently.
- Do not switch to L function on paved roads.

Creep mode

- Creeping mode is applicable to gravel road, uneven road, boulder road, cross axle and extrication conditions. When this function is turned on, you do not need to step on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, and the vehicle will automatically maintain a low speed and run at a constant speed according to the set speed. It is recommended to use this function in off-road conditions or when needing to get unstuck. The gear range of creep speed is from gear 1 to 12.
- Function on and off:
  - Press the creep switch on the infotainment touchscreen to open or close the creep mode.
  - After the creep mode is turned on, engage the D gear to activate the creep mode, and the instrument indicator lights up.
  - If the indicator light is white, it indicates that the function is on and the creeping function is in the standby state.
- Creep speed gear setting:
  - Acceleration: Cruise speed control button +
  - Deceleration: Cruise speed control button-

Recommended target speed gear

Creep speed gear	Road conditions
Gear 1-3	Rock terrain, cross-axle terrain
Gear 4-6	Cross-axle terrain, macadam-like terrain (downhill)
Gear 7-9	Snow terrain, macadam-like terrain (flat or uphill)
Gear 10-12	Grass, sand, muddy terrains

- Creep override drive:
  - When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while the creep mode is active, the creep mode is temporarily disabled. When the vehicle speed exceeds 55km/h, the function will automatically exit.

WARNING

- The creep mode can assist the driver, but it cannot replace the driver to drive. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times to ensure vehicle safety.
- In some bad road conditions, such as steep slopes, extreme ice and snow roads, the creeping function may not be able to maintain low-speed driving, and drivers must be vigilant at all times to avoid accidents.

Precautions for off-road driving

Inspection items before off-road driving

- Check the engine oil and add sufficient oil if necessary. Ensure that the engine runs steadily on steep slopes.
- Check the tread depth and tire pressure, remove the foreign matter stuck on the tread (such as small stones), and carry the intact spare tire.
- Check whether the chassis, body and electrical appliances are damaged.
- Check whether the suspension system can rise and fall normally*.
- Check that all vehicle lights are working properly.
- Check to ensure all tools needed are present and in good condition.
- Check the amount of fuel and the amount of electricity.
- Before starting off-road driving, consult all relevant government agencies to determine where you can legally drive your vehicle and what licenses or registrations are required.
- Improve the off-road driving experience by familiarizing yourself with the vehicle's dimensions, including approach angle, departure angle, longitudinal breakover angle, ground clearance, and vehicle features.
- Fix all articles in the vehicle firmly to prevent danger caused by movement and falling of articles during driving.
- Be familiar with the terrain, area and road conditions. Different road surfaces such as hard soil, gravel, rock, grass, sand, mud, rain, snow and ice have different effects on the steering, control and traction of vehicles.
- Driving in a dusty environment or on sand may seriously affect the air cleaner element. Take at least one spare part.
- Fully investigate the road conditions, formulate driving routes and drive cautiously.
- Ensure you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities. Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious casualties.
- Assess terrain conditions and engage the corresponding off-road mode before entering complex terrain to avoid the vehicle losing control.

Inspection items after off-road driving

Off-road driving impose stricter performance requirements on vehicles compared to driving on regular roads. Check the vehicle after off-road driving in order to detect damage immediately and reduce the risk of accidents for yourself and other road users.

- Disengage the differential lock.
- Check whether the steering system is abnormal (heavy steering or abnormal noise).
- Clean headlights and tail lights and inspect for damage.
- Clean front and rear license plates.
- Check the horn.
- Check whether there is oil leakage or liquid leakage at the bottom of the vehicle.
- Clean wheels, tires, wheelhouses, and underbody and inspect for any foreign material and damage.
- Check the air filter and relevant pipelines for water and sand ingress.

- Check for loose threaded fasteners.
- Check the exhaust system for trapped plant twigs or other flammable materials, as these items can increase the risk of a fire.
- Ensure that the area around the air intake and the front grille are clean and free of residual dirt. Pay special attention to the lower grille and radiator components. Neglect of this may cause the engine to overheat, resulting in serious engine damage.
- Check whether there is mud and sand in the front cabin and some shrubs through sand, mud, bushes, etc. Check whether there is sand and mud gathered around the brake, which will affect the braking effect and damage the brake system components. After cleaning the vehicle, please clean vehicle as soon as possible and check it in detail. If there is any abnormality, please contact the authorized service shop of DENZA Automobile as soon as possible.

WARNING

- The following precautions must be observed when driving off-road to minimize personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
  - In a rollover accident, an unbelted passenger has a greater chance of death than a belted passenger. Make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened when driving,
  - When entering the off-road scene, it is recommended to wear walkie-talkies and other communication equipment.
  - Ensure you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your

WARNING

off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities.

- Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious casualties.
- When there is a strong crosswind, slow down and reduce the speed to better control the vehicle.
- When driving in the field or on rough roads, do not drive at high speed, jump, turn sharply, hit objects, etc., otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, seriously damage the vehicle, or even cause serious casualties.
- When driving off-road, maintain extreme caution and avoid driving in hazardous areas.
- Do not hold the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. Severe jolts may cause your hands to jerk against the steering wheel, resulting in injuries to hands. Place your hands, especially your thumbs, on the outer ring of the steering wheel and try to hold the steering wheel with both hands.
- Do not enter areas where traffic is prohibited.
- In unfamiliar areas, drive at low speed to be aware of any obstacles you may encounter.
- If the low oil pressure warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible.

WARNING

Check the engine oil level and do not ignore the warning from the low oil pressure warning light. Continuing to drive in this condition may result in engine damage.

- Off-road driving increases the likelihood of vehicle damage, which may result in assembly or system failure. The driving style should be adjusted according to the terrain conditions.
- Incorrect use of driving modes can cause the vehicle to respond incorrectly to road conditions, reducing the life of the suspension and driveline.

CAUTION

- Before switching to the off-road mode, it is necessary to ensure that the seat belt is buckled. If the seat belt is not fastened, the alarm of the infotainment touchscreen will be triggered.
- The braking effect must be checked immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow. Do not enter the sand after driving in the mud, so as to avoid damaging the transmission or brake after getting wet in the mud.

Wading mode

Introduction to wading mode

- The wading mode is suitable for roads with water, and the maximum wading depth is 700 mm. By taking over the engine in time, controlling the sound in the wet area and limiting the discharge inside and outside the vehicle, the vehicle can improve its wading trafficability and safety.

How to Use

- Mode activated
  - OK indicator is on.
  - Tap the infotainment touchscreen → driving mode App → Wading mode or wake up by voice "Hi, BYD, enter the wading mode" to enter the driving mode App, click the wading mode, read and agree to the pop-up instructions and risk tips, and then click "Agree" to enter.
- Mode exit
  - Toggle the mode scroll button on the steering wheel or the off-road scroll button to switch to another mode to exit.
  - Click the exit button on the center console.

WARNING

- It is not recommended to wade into water unless necessary.
- Be sure to turn on the wading mode before entering the wading area, and do not exit the wading mode and power on and off the vehicle in the wading area.
- Do not exceed the maximum allowable wading depth indicated by the vehicle.
- Do not drive or stop in the deep water area for a long time.
- Avoid driving in turbulent water. Always drive slowly with a speed below 15 km/h, and do not accelerate or rush into the wading area.
- The wading mode can not monitor the actual water

WARNING

condition and water flow speed around the vehicle or predict whether the water depth around the vehicle rises rapidly, can not identify the waterproof sealing of the current vehicle, and can not predict whether it is safe to continue driving.

- The function of wading detection is only an auxiliary tool, which can not replace the driver's judgment of the external situation. In any case, the driver is responsible for driving safety. Beware of the surroundings and drive with caution when wading.
- Before wading, the driver should assess whether the function using conditions are met. Pay attention to surroundings to identify potential hazards when using this function to wade, so as to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.
- Before wading, the driver needs to confirm the wading area conditions. Do not attempt to wade if the water depth cannot be confirmed. Taking a detour is recommended.
- Wading mode is not suitable for all working conditions and environments, and can not guarantee the safe driving of vehicles in complex driving conditions such as floods, deep water, rivers and rainstorms.
- Avoid wading into deep water areas, as driving beyond the maximum allowable wading depth may cause vehicle damage or even personal injury.

WARNING

- During wading, if it is found that water enters the engine intake pipe or the engine fails, do not switch driving modes or power off and on the vehicle, otherwise it may be damaged.
- Only wade in fresh water.

CAUTION

- Ensure the SOC is above 20% before use, and pay close attention to the remaining battery of the vehicle.
- Please confirm that the door is closed and the rearview mirror is unfolded before use.
- The wading mode cannot work when the vehicle activates adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic parking (APA)* and automatic emergency braking (AEB).
- Entering the wade mode will limit the discharge function. After driving out of the wading area, please exit this mode or power on and off to restore the discharge function inside and outside the vehicle.
- Entering the wading mode will force the wet-zone sound to be turned off. After exiting the wading mode for a period of time, the wet-zone sound control will be restored.
- The maximum static wading capacity refers to the depth at which the vehicle slowly passes through the still water. A lower value should be considered in flowing water.

CAUTION

- In the process of wading, pay attention to the water waves caused by the vehicle in front, which may cause the wading depth to exceed the maximum allowable value.
- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for checks after wading.

Vehicle inspection and servicing

- After the vehicle has waded across the water, it is recommended to carry out the following checks immediately:
  - Check whether there is abnormal water ingress.
  - Check whether there are abnormal instrument warnings.
  - Check horn sound.
  - Check front combination lights, rear combination lights and turn signals.
  - Check the brake disc for abnormal sound.

Sport+ mode

Sport+ mode

- It is suitable for professional tracks or test sections. Do not use this mode on public roads or low-adhesion roads such as mountains, rocks, rain, snow and wading. This mode has catapult start conditions, which can increase the output power to peak power in a short time, bringing you the ultimate acceleration experience.

How to use the ejection start function

- Switch to sport+ mode through infotainment touchscreen driving mode App or intelligent voice assistant. When the shift lever is in D gear, step on the accelerator and brake deeply at the same time. When the instrument cluster displays "ejection start function is activated", release the brake pedal within 3 seconds.

WARNING

- Be sure to drive carefully in accordance with local laws and regulations.
- Please pay attention to road safety and surrounding personnel.
- Do not use this function on wet and slippery roads, so as to avoid losing control of the vehicle, causing serious accidental injury or even endangering life.

CAUTION

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please ensure that the surrounding environment is open, the field of vision is wide, and the road is closed and paved.
- Please ensure that the initial charge is higher than 50%.
- The time interval between successful activation of each ejection start is 180 seconds.
- Racing mode disables or limits some vehicle functions, including some auxiliary driving functions.
- Before and after using Sport+ mode, please check the status of power battery, engine, brake, tire pressure and other systems in time.

Custom Mode

Custom mode introduction

- The custom mode provides experienced off-road users with a range of customizable parameter sets. Users can customize the mode according to terrain conditions and personal driving habits (e.g., adjusting power delivery, steering assist settings, and energy regeneration levels), thereby optimizing the off-road driving experience.

How to Use

- Switch to custom mode through driving mode App on the infotainment touchscreen or intelligent voice assistant.

⚠ CAUTION

- To ensure driving safety and optimize the off-road experience, users must fully understand the meanings of all setting parameters and their impact on vehicle performance before use.
- When selecting different configurations, consider the actual using scenarios, such as: It is recommended to set the cooling mode to a higher level during intense off-road driving.
- If customized configurations are incompatible, switch to the special terrain mode or reset to factory default settings.

U-turn

U-turn introduction

- U-turn function is suitable for outdoor off-road vehicles that need to turn or U-turn on narrow roads. Ordinary normal steering can not complete U-turn or steering on narrow roads because of the large turning diameter. U-turn function can significantly reduce the turning diameter and improve the maneuverability of vehicles in narrow spaces.

Enabling the function

- Activate the turning around function by the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App → U-turn or by the intelligent voice.

Function access

- A feature information popup window will appear when the user chooses the U-turn on the infotainment touchscreen for the first time. Please carefully read the feature information and confirm.
- After entering the function, the system will judge whether the opening conditions are met. If not, the system will give a pop-up prompt. Please follow the prompt. After meeting the conditions, you can enter the U-turn user interaction interface.
- If the pop-up window prompts "the system status is not satisfied", indicating that the vehicle is faulty, please go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle problem.

User interaction interface

- Terrain selection: Different terrain modes are provided on the interface for the driver to select. The driver is requested to select the appropriate mode according to the road surface recommended on the interface.
- Text guide: The driver can adjust the position of the vehicle by driving normally at low speed, and the interface will give text to guide the driver to activate the U-turn function correctly.
  - Prompt "The slope is too large, please drive the vehicle to the flat ground", indicating that there is a certain slope on the current road

surface, and the vehicle needs to be moved to a relatively flat road surface.

- Prompt "System cooling", wait for the system cooling to be completed before continuing to use the function.

Function activation and exit

- The driver can directly click "Start" to activate the U-turn function, or slide the car model in the image, select the specified angle and click "Start" to activate the function.
- After clicking "Start", according to the guidance of the pop-up window, turn the steering wheel to the limit position and maintain, engage D gear, release the brake, the function can be activated, and the vehicle starts to rotate.
- If the angle is not selected, the vehicle can continue to turn, the driver can press the brake pedal to stop the function, or click "stop" to end the U-turn, and press the accelerator pedal during the turn to increase the speed of the vehicle.
- If the designated angle rotation is selected, the vehicle will stop smoothly and engage P gear after rotating to the designated angle. During the rotation, the driver can stop the rotation in advance by stepping on the brake pedal or clicking "stop".
- When the U-turn is activated, the central control screen will display the reference track information of the vehicle rotation effect. The actual track is affected by the distortion of the ground and panoramic image and the camera blind area. The driver should always pay attention to the vehicle status and the surrounding conditions of the vehicle to ensure that he can take over the vehicle control in time.

WARNING

- When using this function, please ensure that there are no obstacles or pedestrians within a safe distance.
- U-turn is only an auxiliary function, which cannot replace the driver's manual driving operation. Please monitor the vehicle status and the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at all times to ensure that you can take over the control of the vehicle in time.
- Please ensure that all passengers in the vehicle are wearing seat belts and are in good physical condition, and the driver meets the driving requirements of the vehicle.
- Affected by the actual road conditions, vehicle tires and load, the actual rotation effect of the vehicle is different from the reference trajectory. Please always pay attention to the actual trajectory of the vehicle and drive cautiously.

CAUTION

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please turn off the automatic parking, towing function, electronic body stability system, driver assistance function, etc. Before turning on this function.
- Use this function on a flat and even road surface.
- Please activate the function according to the operation prompt on the infotainment touchscreen.

CAUTION

- The system may be overheated if it is used continuously for a long time. Please pay attention to the use time.
- Frequent use of this function may cause certain damage to the tire. Please pay attention to the frequency of use.
- There is a difference in steering flexibility in non-use scenarios. Please always pay attention to the vehicle rotation track.
- This function can realize continuous U-turn and user-defined angle U-turn. By default, the vehicle can rotate without stepping on the accelerator pedal. Stepping on the accelerator pedal during continuous U-turn can increase the rotation speed of the vehicle. Please operate with caution.
- Please select the appropriate terrain mode according to the actual road conditions.

Burst Mode

Burst mode introduction

- Burst mode is suitable for low-speed climbing, tug-of-war and other scenes. It is characterized by improving the traction capacity and body stability of the vehicle. There are two sub-modes of climbing and tug-of-war in this mode.
  - Climbing mode is mainly aimed at low-speed off-road scenes, which can control wheel speed faster and more accurately to bring the best slow off-road experience.
  - Tug-of-war mode is mainly aimed at tug-of-war and traction conditions. In this mode, tires can get better grip to give full play to the best traction performance of the whole vehicle.

How to Use

- Mode activated
  - The vehicle is stationary and the "OK" indicator is illuminated.
  - Tap the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App → Burst mode, or wake up by voice "Hi, BYD, enter the violance mode" to enter the driving mode App, click the violance mode, read and agree to the pop-up instructions and risk tips, and then click "Agree" to enter.
- Mode exit
  - Toggle the mode scroll button on the steering wheel or the off-road scroll button to switch to another mode to exit.
  - Click the exit button on the center console.

CAUTION

- When burst mode is activated, the differential lock is required to be locked for maximum vehicle capacity.
- After entering the burst mode, L function will be automatically turned on. If L function fails to be turned on, it will exit the burst mode. At this time, you can try to move the vehicle back and forth and then enter the burst mode.
- The tug-of-war may cause damage to the vehicle, so please drive carefully.
- If there is continuous skidding on wet and muddy roads, you can try to switch to other terrain modes.

Differential Lock

- The differential lock is mainly applicable to off-road roads. When one side of the tire slips, the differential lock can be started to adjust the power imbalance caused by the tire slip to help the vehicle out of trouble.
- ① Front differential lock locked/ unlocked
  - Press this button to lock/unlock.
- ② Rear differential lock locked/ unlocked
  - Press this button to lock/unlock.

REMINDER

- The locking or unlocking of the differential lock can also be controlled through the front and rear differential lock buttons on the infotainment touchscreen.

- Only perform the lockup in the following cases:
  - OK indicator is on.
  - The vehicle speed is below 4 km/h.
  - The speed difference between left and right wheels is less than 50 rpm.
  - Intelligent driving, remote control driving, U-turn, steering assist (front electronic differential lock) are not activated.
- The differential lock is automatically unlocked when one of the following conditions is met:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 36 km/h.
  - Switch to non-terrain mode.
  - Power off the vehicle.
  - Unlocking the rear differential lock will automatically unlock the front differential lock.

WARNING

- Do not drive violently when the differential lock is locked.
- It is forbidden to use the differential lock on paved roads (such as normal roads and cement roads).
- When the differential lock is locked, large angle turns should be reduced, which may damage the parts of the vehicle transmission system.
- When the differential lock is engaged, control the vehicle carefully and avoid sharp turns. Otherwise, the vehicle stability will be seriously affected, increasing the risk of accidents.
- After getting out of trouble, the differential lock should be released immediately.

REMINDER

- Typical application scenarios are cross-axis working conditions such as mud, snow and other low-attached roads, rock roads, uneven roads and so on.
- If it is difficult to lock and unlock the vehicle, please move forward at a low speed and gently turn

REMINDER

the steering wheel left and right to assist the locking and unlocking of the vehicle.

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Some corresponding measures, such as good driving style and regular maintenance can not only improve the driving range and reduce fuel consumption, but also be conducive to environmental protection.

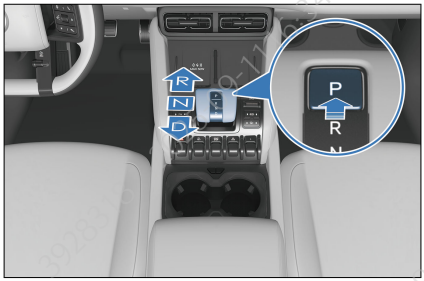
- Drive in economic mode as much as possibly.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
  - Perform regular maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economy for the vehicle.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
  - Maintaining economic speed can effectively improve driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessively high or low speeds are not beneficial for fuel efficiency. Under safe conditions, try to keep your vehicle at the economic speed.
- Predictive driving:
  - On the premise of ensuring driving safety:
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking.
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
  - When driving into the red light, the accelerator pedal should be released to allow the vehicle to use inertia to slide.
  - Keep a steady speed.
- Use the energy recovery system properly
  - Under safe driving conditions, select an appropriate braking intensity based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, please apply gentle braking to decelerate and avoid abrupt stops.
- Reduce unnecessary in-vehicle items:
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - The heating and cooling processes are highly energy-intensive, significantly reducing driving range and increasing fuel consumption. Reasonable use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce both electricity and fuel consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary features:
  - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear actuator is marked on the gearshift lever as shown on the right.
- "P" : Park. Press this button to park the vehicle and the parking indicator will light up. By pressing the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you can shift from Park to another position.



CAUTION

- To prevent damage, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

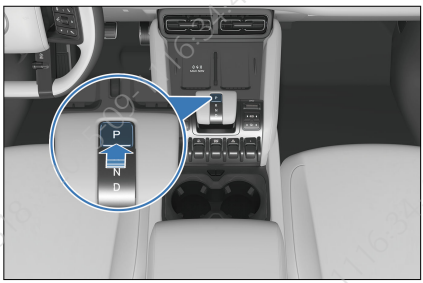
- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into Drive.
- Shifting out of Park or into Drive requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button once the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.

CAUTION

- If the EPB indicator fails to turn on after the vehicle is shifted into "P", go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** to enable the EPB manually. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

The P Parking Switch

- Press this button to park the vehicle and the button lights up with the vehicle shifted into "P".



Electricity generation in "P"

When the vehicle SOC is low, press the "P" button and shift into Park, and the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed is different from the normal idle speed (see ***P100***), and it automatically exits after generating a certain amount of electricity. If high-power generation or more electricity is needed, step on the accelerator pedal and stop after generating more electricity.

- Activating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is very low.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - A certain amount of electricity is generated.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.
  - The engine or clutch fails.

Shutting the engine down in "P"

When the vehicle SOC is high, the engine is automatically shut down after "P" is engaged, and the power consumption of electric equipment is supplied by the high-voltage battery, which can reduce fuel consumption and noise in the vehicle in idle condition.

- Activating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is high.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The high-voltage battery is low.
  - The outside temperature is very low, and there is a need for heating or defrosting.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.

WARNING

- If the engine or motor is shut down, do not allow the vehicle to move after it has been shifted to "N", to avoid accidents due to insufficient braking force.
- When the engine or motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, be sure to stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, as the actuator can still transmit force and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.
- Never coast downhill in "N" or "P", even if the motor is not running.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

Pull down the convenience bar or turn on the electronic parking brake through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**. In the case of non-P gear, when the EPB is in the release state and the brake pedal is pressed, the EPB will apply an appropriate parking force, and the indicator light on the instrument cluster will flash first. After it is solid on, it means that the EPB has been turned on, and there is a text prompt "Electronic parking has been started".

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear:

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal:

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as "D" or "R", engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and (P) turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- When the vehicle is in motion and ESC system works normally, controlled deceleration for parking (CDP) can be used for emergency braking if braking fails or is blocked.
  - Press the "P" button for over two seconds to force the vehicle to brake. Pressing the brake pedal simultaneously allows the vehicle to decelerate faster.
  - You can release the "P" button to stop braking.
  - After the vehicle stops, EPB remains engaged and must be released again before you can start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- When CDP is activated, if the accelerator pedal is pressed more deeply, CDP will exit and the vehicle will keep running.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is mainly set for the automatical EPB engagement function with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for being towed, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the mode to exit EPB.

- Tap ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **EPB Trailer Mode** to enable the function.
- EPB trailer mode activation conditions (all must be met):
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode exiting conditions (one of them is enough):
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in three seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. The indicator (!) on the cluster turns on and then turns off in about three seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent serious accidents, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB button when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB is being engaged or released, press and hold the brake pedal to prevent vehicle slipping the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because the EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking brake force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the vehicle needs to be stationary on the road for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, enable AVH by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**, then AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lights up on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.

AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, powering off the vehicle, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.

⚠ CAUTION

- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.

- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is being transported via trailer, ship, train, etc., do not use AVH to park. Instead, shift the gear into Park to engage EPB, turn off the vehicle and lock it to prevent insufficient braking force caused by vehicle movement during transportation, which could risk unintended vehicle movement.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.
- If the wheel is stuck, it is recommended that you switch to sand mode to get out of the trap. However, if the vehicle power is low, all four wheels slip, EV function is limited or ESC system fails, the vehicle may not be able to get out of trouble successfully.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not use the brake pedal as a footrest. The brake system may overheat if you put your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This will increase the braking distance and may even lead to braking system failure and the risk of accidents.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is running normally, please do not press the "Start/Stop" button for more than 3s. This operation will cut off the power output and activate the emergency power off function. Therefore, unless it is absolutely necessary (such as when it is impossible to stop normally), do not use this method to stop, so as

CAUTION

not to cause vehicle collision or serious personal injury.

- If the emergency power-off function is activated, the vehicle will be switched from "OK" to "ON", and the vehicle will lose power and cannot run normally. At this time, it is recommended that you turn on the hazard warning lamp.
- Emergency power off during driving will not cause the steering system and braking system to be out of control, but the steering wheel and brake will lose power assistance. At this time, it is more laborious to turn the steering wheel and step on the brake pedal. Therefore, before emergency power withdrawal, the vehicle should be slowed down as much as possible, or parked on the roadside as far as possible on the premise of safety.

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Under normal driving conditions, do not press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the power output may be limited.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible on wet roads.

CAUTION

- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle battery is low, you can use the on-board generator function. Refer to the charging instructions section in this chapter for more information.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - Such products are available in DENZA Auto Authorized Service Store and all auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires have better grip on snowy roads. The special rubber tread design makes the tire less affected by low temperature environment and provides excellent braking performance, thus improving driving safety.

Usage Tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires when driving on ice and snow roads and when the temperature is below 7 degrees Celsius. When the temperature rises to 7 °C, summer tires or all-season tires should be replaced quickly to ensure driving safety and performance.
- When using winter tires, the same tire specifications, load grades and speed grades as the original design of the vehicle should be selected.
- Winter tyres should have sufficient tread depth. The pattern depth should not be less than 4mm, otherwise the applicability in winter will be limited.
- Winter tires and summer tires are designed for the specific acceleration conditions of the corresponding season. It is recommended to use them in the corresponding season, otherwise it may lead to poor tire adhesion, poor braking ability and so on.
- Winter tires have a relatively low maximum speed, so don't exceed it.
- After the winter tire is installed, the tire pressure shall be tested according to the design tire pressure.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, suspensions, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 10 mm in thickness or diameter, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, it is suggested to consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Do not drive at speed above 40 km/h or maintain a speed lower than the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them immediately after driving on snowy or muddy roads.
- If an abnormal sound is heard from the snow chain, please stop the vehicle immediately to check whether the vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines are normal, and ensure that there is no contact between them and the snow chains.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Before installing snow chains, engage the parking brake.
- Do not install snow chains with insufficient tire pressure.
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the wheel rims.

Driver Assistance

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

- The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system, an extension of the traditional cruise control, uses front mmWave radars and a multi-purpose camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to control vehicle speed accordingly. If the road ahead is clear, ACC will maintain the vehicle at the set cruising speed. If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle will adjust its speed according to the following time set by the driver.

Status Description

- ACC standby:
  - Once enabled, the system is on standby by default and can be manually activated. If the vehicle does not meet activation conditions, it must be checked until such conditions are met. At this time, (with a variable cruise speed value) is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ACC activated:
  - The system is operational. It maintains the set speed or automatically adjusts the distance from the vehicle ahead. At this time, (with a variable cruise speed value) is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Over speed:
  - When you step the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, the vehicle responds to your acceleration action so that the ACC is temporarily deactivated until you release the pedal.

- ACC failure:
  - There has been a failure in the system. No operation can be performed, and the ACC failure indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

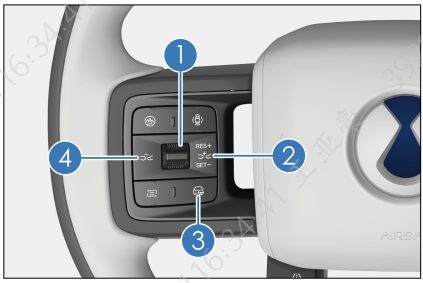
ACC Activation Conditions

- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 130 km/h (80 mph).
- Brake pedal is pressed at speed 0; or brake pedal is not pressed at speeds above 0.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

Cruise Button Operation

ACC activation/exit button

- Press button ③ to activate or exit ACC. (The system is in standby when activation conditions are met). (By default, ACC activation by pressing button ③ sets the current speed as the cruise speed. If the current speed is below 30 km/h, the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h.)



Resetting ACC

- When the ACC system is on standby within the same ignition cycle, the system memorizes the last speed setting (on the instrument cluster). Push up the lever ① to restore to the stored speed prior to exiting the cruise system. If the system does not memorizes any vehicle speed (ACC is activated for the first time in this cycle), the "RESET" button will not activate the ACC.

Increasing/Decreasing target vehicle speed

- When ACC is active, set the vehicle to a speed within the 5-130 km/h range by moving the lever ①. Toggle the lever ① up/down to increase/decrease the vehicle speed by 5 km/h. Press and hold the lever up/down to continuously increase/decrease the vehicle speed by 1 km/h.

Exiting ACC

- While ACC is being activated, pressing the button ③ for a second time or depressing the brake pedal makes the ACC system go on standby.

Setting vehicle distance

- The driver must select a safe vehicle distance.
- The system adjusts vehicle speed to keep a suitable distance from the vehicle ahead on the same lane. Pressing buttons ② and ④ on the

steering wheel adjusts vehicle distance to any of the four available levels. At each level, vehicle distance is in direct proportion to vehicle speed. The faster the speed, the longer the distance.

Increasing/Decreasing speed with ACC active

- The driver can adjust the cruise speed through the central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Stepping on the accelerator pedal**, set the switch status of the function, and turn off the default function of the system.
- When ACC is activated, you can press the accelerator pedal to reach the set target cruise speed in advance. The system then enters over speed mode. At the target cruise speed, if you accelerate without performing any other operations, the vehicle accelerates and then returns to target cruise speed after the accelerator pedal is released. If the you press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle speed continuously, ACC goes into standby mode. After the brake is released, ACC will need to be reactivated.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Controlled by ACC, the vehicle can stop when the vehicle ahead stops in normal driving conditions and resume driving automatically following the vehicle ahead if the stop is less than 30 seconds.
- If the vehicle stops for 30 seconds to three minutes, press the accelerator pedal or dial up the ACC cruise button① to start.
- If the vehicle stops for more than three minutes, the ACC system enters standby mode, with EPB engaged.

Avoid overtaking in the slow lane

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ICC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 90 km/h.
- The driver can set the switch state of the function through central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Avoiding overtaking in the slow lane**, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is driving in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will automatically control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

Slow down on the curve

- The curve speed droop function only works when the ACC function is active.
- The driver can set the switch status of the function through the central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Curve speed deceleration** switch, which is off by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve under the active state of ICC, the system will slow down to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to pass through the curve smoothly, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- The front mmWave radars and multi-purpose camera are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of

its detection area by contaminants can disturb the intended function. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, the ACC system exits and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.

- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the ACC vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- Traffic flow and weather conditions - such as rain and fog - must be heeded for setting vehicle distance on the ACC system. After the ACC system is properly set, the driver must ensure to decelerate or stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system cannot identify pedestrians or oncoming vehicles.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and camera may be affected by vibration or collision. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- ACC cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

Precautions

- ACC is a comfort system rather than a safety system, obstacle detector or collision warning system. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- The ACC assists the driver, but is not a substitute for the driver. Drivers must abide by traffic rules and keep vehicle control at all times and be fully responsible for their vehicles.
- For safety reasons, ACC cannot be activated with ESC disabled.

- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The vehicle distance set by ACC meets the minimum distance required in driving environments in the country.
- Vehicle control is transferred to the driver if the accelerator or brake pedal is pressed with ACC active. As a result, the ACC system cannot keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- The ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes suddenly (emergency stop), resulting in a risk of late braking. In such cases, there will be no take-over request.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed, so response has to come from the driver. The system cannot give audio or visual warnings in every case.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- A short distance from an adjacent lane (or a vehicle on an adjacent lane that is too close to the ACC vehicle's lane) may trigger ACC to brake.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and within the detection range of its front mmWave radars are identified as target vehicles and prompt a response accordingly, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, four-wheeler, or pedestrian, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles. In such cases, vehicle speed must be controlled by the driver. In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- ACC cannot target vehicles with too small contact ratio, so the driver must keep control of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognize the end of the vehicle ahead but the lower end of the target (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a vehicle bumper). In such cases, the system cannot ensure proper stop distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- Changing the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis or changing the front license mounting plate, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use the ACC system when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- When ACC is activated and the vehicle is stationary behind another vehicle, if the steering wheel is turned at a large angle, ACC will judge that the driver wants to change lanes and start, and ACC will exit.
- When AVH is activated (the vehicle is stationary), the activation of ACC will cause the AVH to exit. Press the ICC/ACC/RESET+ button again, and the

vehicle will idle (ACC exits) or cruise (ACC does not exit).

- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checking of front mmWave radars or the front camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar, front bumper, or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

WARNING

- ACC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ACC to fail.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

- The intelligent cruise control (ICC) integrates ACC and lane centering control (LCC). It helps control the vehicle both longitudinally and laterally at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h, easing the driving burden and enhancing driving safety and comfort.
- When the function is enabled, the driver must always hold the steering wheel and control the vehicle when necessary.
- Longitudinal assistance, driven by the ACC system, keeps the vehicle at a fixed speed or a fixed distance from the road user ahead.

ICC Activation Conditions

- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 130 km/h.
- Brake pedal is pressed at speed 0; or brake pedal is not pressed at speeds above 0.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.
- Two-way lane lines are clear and the vehicle is at the center of the lane.

How to Use

- The user can activate or deactivate the ICC through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → ADAS → Driving assist setting interface. This function can only be disabled on the infotainment touchscreen when the vehicle is in Park. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle is just started.
- When ICC is enabled, the driver can activate and exit the ICC function

through the ① steering wheel button. After activation, the system will automatically set the current speed as the target cruise speed. If the current speed is less than 30 km/h, the target cruise speed will be set as 30 km/h.

- When the ICC function is enabled, the standby state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. .
- When the ICC function is activated, the activated state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. .

  When ICC is operational, the vehicle drives by the set speed or by automatically adjusting the distance from the vehicle ahead.

Hand-off Reminder and Minimum Risk Strategy

- During the ICC activation process, the driver's continuous release will trigger the release reminder;
- After the three-level reminder is triggered, the system will automatically execute the minimum risk strategy, light up the double flash and control the vehicle to complete the comfortable parking in this lane.
- The following behaviors can interrupt the minimum risk strategy:
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;
  - The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
  - The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/ paddle;
  - Switch the gear to Park.
- In a single power-on cycle, the ICC function is prohibited to be activated after the three-level alarm is triggered for three times, and the system is in the punishment mechanism state. The function can be activated normally only after the system is powered on and off again.

Avoid overtaking in the slow lane

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ICC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 90 km/h.
- The driver can set the switch state of the function through central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Avoiding overtaking in the slow lane**, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is driving in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will automatically control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

Slow down on the curve

- The curve speed droop function only works when the ICC function is active.
- The driver can set the switch status of the function through the central

infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Curve speed deceleration** switch, which is off by default.

- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve under the active state of ICC, the system will slow down to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to pass through the curve smoothly, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

Precautions

- ICC integrates ACC and LCC. Therefore, ACC function precautions must be followed during use.
- When ICC is turned on and activated at vehicle speeds between 0 km/h and 130 km/h:
  - If there is no lane lines ahead, transverse ICC control is suppressed and only ACC works. In that case, ICC system is standby.
  - If lane lines ahead are clear and recognizable, transverse ICC control is activated automatically. In that case, ICC system is activated.
- The ICC system is a driving assistance system, not an automatic driving system. The driver should keep control of the vehicle at all times, and their hands should not leave the steering wheel for a long time. Otherwise, the system will exit after prompting the driver to take over the control.
- The ICC system can be affected by weather conditions, lighting and clarity of lane lines. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlighting, sunset, snow covered roads, and severely damaged roads.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front mmWave radars or the front camera.
- ICC cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.
- Scenarios where the function cannot be used (including but not limited to):
  - The sensor is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather conditions.
  - Active safety function has been triggered.
  - Vehicle speed exceeds the specified range.
  - The road is too curvy.

⚠ CAUTION

- ICC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ICC to fail.
- When the vehicle passes through a too curvy road, it may exceed the system's ability to pass through the curve and automatically exit the ICC function. The driver should always be aware to the road environment and function status.
- When the vehicle is running at high speed, the driver should always pay attention to the road environment and functional status, and take over the control

⚠ CAUTION

of the vehicle in time when necessary, otherwise collision is very likely to occur.

- Use ICC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- Forward collision warning (FCW) and automatic emergency braking (AEB) detect vehicles and pedestrians ahead by using the front mmWave radar and the multi-purpose camera. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk. If detecting increased risk of collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- The operating speed range of the forward collision warning system is 30-130km/h, and the operating speed range of the automatic emergency braking system is 4-130km/h.

How to Use

- Each time the vehicle is powered on, the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking functions are turned on by default. To enable or disable FCW and AEB, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  The forward collision alert sensitivity defaults to "moderate" and the system remembers the last setting.

Forward collision warning (FCW)

Safe distance warning

- If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead at speeds above 65 km/h for too long, the system gives a safety distance warning, and ⚠ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Pre-warning

- If the vehicle travels at speeds above 30 km/h and the system recognizes a risk of collision with a vehicle ahead, the system will give a warning visually and audibly, and the indicator ⚠ on the cluster will light up and the buzzer will alarm. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

Emergency warning

- If the vehicle travels at speeds above 30 km/h and the driver fails to respond to the pre-warning, the system will give a warning visually and audibly. ⚠ flashes and there is a short braking warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
- If the driver fails to respond to the emergency alarm in the forward collision warning and the system judges that the dangerous situation has escalated further, it will trigger automatic emergency braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.

System Limitations

- FCW and AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - On rainy, snowy or foggy days, or exposure to direct sunlight or glaring

lights, or significantly varying lighting conditions.

- Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.

- In complex traffic situations, FCW and AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

Precautions

- The AEB system cannot ensure zero collision. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles or pedestrians. It may trigger unnecessary warning or braking action for well covers, iron plates or road signs.
- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for normal braking operation.
- Do not overly rely on AEB as this may result in severe injuries or deaths. The system is only an auxiliary safety tool. The driver must always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, control the speed, and be ready to brake or steer away when necessary. The driver must keep control of the vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for safe driving.
- Automatic emergency braking can only be activated when the driving speed is greater than 4km/h, but it can reduce the vehicle speed by up to 60 km/h. The system cannot guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under any working condition. Please drive carefully. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.
- The AEB system cannot work normally when the ESC function is disabled or the fault light is on.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning but turns the steering wheel, accelerates or brakes.

- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Sometimes the surfaces of radars or the multi-purpose camera are dirty or obscured by foreign objects. In this case, a message is displayed on the instrument cluster. Remove foreign matter from the sensor as required (dirt or foreign objects on the surface may blind the sensors). When the sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking functions are turned off, and after clearing, the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking functions are normal.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether the pedestrian protection scenario gives a warning, or whether the braking system can be used to brake or avoid pedestrians, needs to be based on the actual situation.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents and severe injuries on its own.
- Under certain complex conditions, such as on winding roads, the pedestrian protection function may trigger unnecessary warning or braking.
- System failure may trigger unnecessary warnings or braking. This may be caused, for example, by the misalignment of the front mmWave radar or front camera.
- AEB intervenes only when all doors, engine compartment and the trunk are closed and the seat belts are fastened. The following conditions may cause the automatic emergency braking fail to work, including but not limited to:
  - The hood and trunk of the front compartment are not closed properly or the hood and trunk of the front compartment are opened during driving.
  - The seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The driver presses throttle hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tires.
  - Unqualified tires installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Make sure to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of front mmWave radars or the front camera in any of the following situations:

- The front mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- AEB cannot be activated if special driving modes such as trailer/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

CAUTION

- The forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking function is only a driving assistance function. The precautions only include the common conditions affecting the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking function. Many factors may affect the function performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCW and AEB to fail.
- Use FCW and AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) and Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)

- Upon vehicle startup, front cross traffic alert (FCTA) and front cross traffic braking (FCTB) detect vehicles crossing the driveway at the front through mmWave radars on both sides of the front bumper to alert the driver and engage the brake if necessary. When the vehicle just started (with a low speed < 5km/h), the function detects a risk of collision with a vehicle crossing the driveway at the front, it provides the driver with visual and audible alerts. If the driver does not respond to the warning and the system determines that a collision is imminent, automatic emergency braking is triggered to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- The operating speed range of FCTA is 10-20km/h, and the operating speed range of AEB is 4-20 km/h.

How to Use

- Enable or disable the FCTA and FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle is just started. When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned off by default.
- When FCTA is activated, an audible alarm sounds.
- When FCTB is activated, is displayed on the instrument cluster and an audible alarm sounds, with AEB automatically braking the vehicle.
- In the event of FCTA/FCTB malfunction, is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Precautions

- While the system provides assistance in monitoring front left and right sides, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the FCTA/FCTB system may not be able to provide adequate warning.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of the system, keeping mmWave radars on both side of the bumper in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target vehicle (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- The system does not work in the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - FCTA or FCTB is switched off.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - Four doors are open.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - MmWave radars fail.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- FCTB cannot be activated if special driving modes such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- The front lateral collision warning/braking function is only used as a driving assistance function. The precautions only include the common conditions affecting the front lateral collision warning and front lateral collision braking function. Many factors may affect the function performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may

WARNING

cause FCTA/FCTB to fail or lead to late braking.

- Use FCTA/FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

The Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system identifies speed limit signs through the front camera, displays such signs on the current road on the instrument cluster, and sends alarm messages to the driver when vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

How to Use

- When the TSR system identifies the current traffic sign, the identified speed limit icon is displayed on the instrument cluster (for example, 120).
- When the speed displayed on the instrument is greater than speed limit value recognized by the system plus the target speed offset value set by the driver, the instrument speed limit icon will remind or sound alarm to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.
- When the TSR system is disabled or identifies no traffic sign, no icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Precautions

- The speed limit icon disappears from the instrument cluster within a certain distance after system recognition. The driver must control speed within range.
- The TSR system can identify speed limit signs only, and will not control speed. The control over the vehicle always vests in the driver. Please drive properly.
- When there are several speed limit signs on side-by-side lanes, the system recognizes the limit sign of current lane to display the speed limit alert icon. The driver must remain in the correct lane.
- Weight limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may mistakenly be identified as speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- TSR performance depends on weather conditions, lighting, and sign visibility. The system may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign at night or sunset, in rainy, foggy, hazy, snowy or dusty environment, when light is coming from the back of the vehicle, or when there is a sudden change in lighting.
- In case there is a collision or the camera sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

WARNING

- Lane Assist is only intended as a driver assistance function. Cautions include only the common conditions that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. Drivers are advised to keep an eye on the surrounding area, pay

WARNING

attention to any signs erected by the roadside and observe the relevant regulations. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.

- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause TSR to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use TSR based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

- Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) detects current driving conditions by using multi-purpose camera sensors and automatically activates or deactivates the high beam accordingly, when vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h.

How to Use

- Enable or disable IHBC on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle is just started.
- With the function enabled, when you set the light switch to the auto lights position, the light meets conditions and vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h, the system automatically switches between low and high beams based on the current driving environment. When the function is activated, the IHBC icon will light up on the instrument cluster.
- When the IHBC function is enabled, the standby state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- When the IHBC function is activated, the activated state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- When the IHBC malfunctions, the fault indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

Precautions

- The IHBC system is an auxiliary light control function. While it is recommended to use the system at high vehicle speeds, the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- Beam switching is suppressed if the vehicle is in a high dynamic state, for example when ABS or ESC is activated.
- IHBC system exits when you turn fog lights or all-weather lights on, set wipers to fast mode, are backing up, or set the light switch to a position other than auto lights, or when the environment has too much lighting.
- Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
  - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
  - There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.

- The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

WARNING

- IHBC is only a driving assistance function, which may be triggered by mistake or fail due to several factors such as weather and road condition. The precautions only include the common situations that affect IHBC, some other factors may affect the function performance. The driver should always observe the surrounding situation and actively switch the high and low beam headlights if necessary. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause IHBC to fail.
- Use IHBC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

Lane Departure Assist (LDA) contains two sub-functions: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP). LDW and LDP work within the speed of 60–150km/h.

- Lane departure warning (LDW)
  - The function identifies the front lane lines by the front camera on the upper front windshield. When the driver unconsciously departs from the current lane, the system issues instrument icons, buzzer sounds, or steering wheel vibration alarms to alert the driver by computing the relative distance between the vehicle and lane lines and considering the surroundings.
  - LDW is turned on by factory default, and the alarm mode defaults to steering wheel vibration. When lane lines are detected, instrument lanes are white or gray; when LDW is activated, instrument lanes of departure side will turn red.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP)
  - The function identifies the front lane lines by the front camera on the upper front windshield. When the driver unconsciously departs from the current lane, the system controls the steering wheel to correct lane departure after calculating the relative position of the vehicle and lane lines and considering the surroundings.
  - LDP is turned off by factory default and can be activated manually.
  - During the activation of LDP, the system gives an alarm when the driver's hands are off the steering wheel. Hands-off alarm includes prompt messages, icons, and sounds.

How to Use

- Users can turn on or off LDW and LDP functions through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assistance**. When the vehicle leaves the factory for the first time, the function is turned off by default. The driver can adjust the function mode of LDW and LDP through the setting interface: Close/steering wheel vibration/correct deviation. The system defaults to

previous settings when the vehicle is just started.

- Function activated. Vehicle offsets when driver does not change lanes. Prompt the driver to correct the direction in time and give an alarm, and the lane line of the deviating side instrument will display red.
- While the LDP function is activated, the driver's hands must not be off the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel. After the LDP is activated, the system accumulates the number of LDP correction activations in a rolling cycle of 180 seconds without driver intervention; there is no audible alarm within 5 seconds of the first LDP activation, and the second LDP activation prompts the driver to take over through audible alarm; The third and each subsequent LDP activation adds up to more than 10 seconds of alarm time from the previous one.
- When LDW or LDP fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with a reminder sound and a pop-up prompt message.

System Limitations

The detection of lane lines by the front camera is easily interfered by the environment. The following situations may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system:

- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
- Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera
- Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
- Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
- Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days

Precautions

- LDW will be suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- LDW may be suppressed if the vehicle travels over lane lines, or lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt/snow.
- LDW may be suppressed if the lane is too wide or too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly on ramps or exits, or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- LDW may be suppressed on slopes or winding roads when the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures lane lines.
- LDW may be suppressed when the vehicle jolts, accelerates or decelerates too quickly, or takes a sharp turn.
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the camera visual field is cracked, if the glass is dyed or inadequately coated; or if any reflecting object is placed on the dashboard or any other object interferes with camera sight.
- LDA system tries to keep the vehicle from deviating from its own lane, but it cannot keep the vehicle running in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, do not test LDW function on your own. The view of front camera cannot be blocked by objects or exposed to strong light. The function will be temporarily exit

if the view is temporarily covered and disturbed by strong light and will recover once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- Disabling the LDW is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in any special driving mode (Trailer/Snow/Mud/Sand/Mountain mode).

WARNING

- Lane assist is only intended as a driver assistance function. Cautions include only the common conditions that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. The driver shall always observe the surrounding conditions and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when the function is inhibited or exited. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause LDA to fail.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

The Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) system identifies lane lines ahead through the high-definition camera installed on the front windshield and identifies vehicles approaching from behind on the adjacent lanes through rear corner mmWave radars. It works when the driver unconsciously departs from lane lines or starts to change lanes, so as to avoid the unintentional crossing of road edges and collisions with oncoming vehicles in the opposite direction or the overtaking vehicles on the adjacent lanes. When the system judges that there is a risk of deviation or collision between the vehicle and the target vehicles, it activates the Electrical Power Steering (EPS) to provide reverse torque to keep the vehicle in the current lane. To help you avoid unintentional crossing of road boundaries or collisions with oncoming vehicles in the opposite direction or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

- ELKA works within the speed of 60km/h~150km/h.
- During the activation of ELKA, the system gives an alarm when the driver's hands are off the steering

wheel. Hands-off alarm includes prompt messages, icons, and buzzer sounds.

How to Use

To enable or disable this function in → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The system is off by default and defaults to settings just before the last power-off when the vehicle starts.

- When ELKA is enabled, is displayed on the instrument cluster with a prompt message and a buzzer sound.
- When ELKA is enabled, if the driver's hands are off the steering wheel, an icon is displayed on the instrument cluster to alert the driver.
- In the event of ELKA malfunction, is displayed on the instrument cluster. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

ELKA may detect incorrect or no lane lines in complex traffic. In the following cases, the system may fail to work or its performance degrades significantly.

- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
- Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera
- Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
- Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
- Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days
- Unidentifiable road boundary with grass, soil, or curb

Precautions

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - The multi-purpose camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - The multi-purpose camera is partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated if special driving modes such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- The adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function is only used as a driving assistance function, and the precautions only include the common situations that affect the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function, and many factors may affect the function performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary

WARNING

measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.

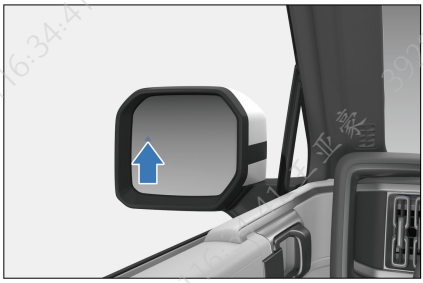
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ELKA to fail.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Blind Spot Assist (BSA) and Rear Assist

Blind Spot Assist (BSA) includes Door Open Warning (DOW), Rear Collision Warning (RCW), Rear Collision Traffic Alert (RCTA), Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) and Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB)*. It detects environment behind the vehicle through radars installed on both sides of the rear bumper so as to remind the driver of safe driving.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- At vehicle speed above 15 km/h, if a vehicle in blind spots on an adjacent lane is detected or a vehicle approaching quickly on the adjacent lane, the indicator on the corresponding side mirror lights up. If the turn signal lamp on the same side is turned on at this time, when there is a lane change or a potential lane change, the exterior rearview mirror warning lamp will flash, the atmosphere lamp will light up and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash to warn the driver that it may be dangerous to continue to change lanes. Please pay attention to safe driving.



Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. If it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, the driver will be reminded by instrument prompt and alarm sound to reduce the possibility of collision. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-15 km/h.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- RCTB is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-10 km/h.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- If it is detected that the rapid approach of a vehicle driving behind the lane may lead to a collision risk, the RCW function lights up the vehicle emergency warning lamp (double flashing lamp) to indicate that the driver of the rear vehicle may have a collision risk, the interior atmosphere lamp and the front left and right atmosphere lamp (corresponding direction) are always on, and the red area at the rear of the

instrument is highlighted. At the same time, the system will remind the driver through the alarm lamp on the outside rearview mirror, please pay attention to safety. The operating speed range of the rear collision warning system is 1-150km/h.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

- If the vehicle is stationary and the door is unlocked, and the moving target approaches the vehicle from the rear of the adjacent lane, the door opening safety reminder function will remind the driver to pay attention to the vehicle coming from the rear through the constant light of the outside rearview mirror alarm lamp, and at the same time, there is a pop-up window reminder on the instrument cluster. If the driver tries to open the door at this time, the exterior rearview mirror is always on or flashing (the first level is solid on and the second level is flashing). Accompanied by an audible reminder.

How to Use

Enable or disable BSD, RCTA, RCTB, RCW, or DOW in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle is just started.

- When the blind spot assist system is disabled, no relevant indicators are displayed on the cluster.
- When the blind spot assist system is standing by, if vehicle conditions, such as speed or gear status, do not meet the requirements of any function, the function will not be activated.
- When the blind spot assist system is active, The instrument displays the left/right rear shallow wave radar, indicating that the function is activated;
- When the BSA malfunctions, is displayed on the instrument cluster. also prompts that the function is temporarily unavailable. In case of failure, please contact the authorized service shop of DENZA Automobile in time.

Precautions

- While the BSD system provides assistance in monitoring blind spots of rearview mirrors, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- The BSD system may be unable to provide adequate warning on target vehicles approaching from behind at a high speed.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping its rear corner mmWave radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target vehicle is too small (a bicycle, electric moped, or pedestrian, for example), the system may fail to identify targets and raise false alarms. In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- If an object with a large reflective cross section, such as a large roadside baffle, a large roadside billboard, or a reflector in a tunnel, is wrongly selected as the detected target, the blind area assistance will give an early warning.
- Blind Zone Safety Assist and Rear Assist will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.

- Blind spot monitoring will not work when reversing.
- Influence of vibration or collision on BSA and rear assist radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In that case, you are recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- In some cases, the system will be difficult to assist the driver, blind spot assist and rear assist may be affected or delayed, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - Vehicles coming from behind are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Vehicles coming from behind are at a relative speed above 80 km/h.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target vehicle (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow. Rear corner mmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

WARNING

- Blind spot assist (BSA) and rear assist are only used as a driving assistance function. The precautions only include the common situations that affect the blind area safety assistance and rear assistance functions. Many factors may affect the functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation to ensure safe driving. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause BSA and rear assist to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use BSA and rear assist based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Head-up Display (HUD)*

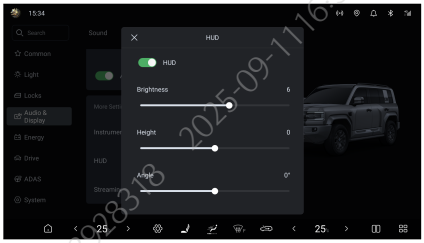
Head-up Display (HUD): The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information on the instrument cluster, including vehicle speed, navigation, ADAS, etc., into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

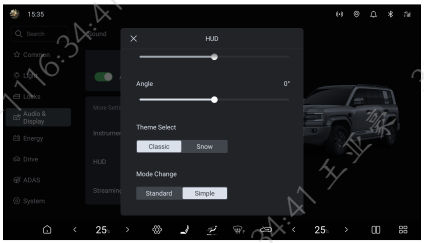
- The user can turn on or off the head-up display function through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ →

Audio&Display or by the intelligent voice "Hi, BYD, open the head-up display (or HUD) "or"Close the head-up display (or HUD) ". By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.

- Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
- Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of Head-up Display virtual image in between 1 and 11. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.
- Angle adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.



- Switching topics: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Mode switching Select standard or concise based on user preference. The system defaults to concise.
- Settings optional for display: Safe driving assistance and navigation can be selected and are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.



CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the button on the steering wheel and to the tire pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to stop the vehicle to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.

- When the temperature of any tire is above 85℃ for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. You are then recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise, vehicle damage or personal injuries may occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, reduce vehicle speed, and pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead

WARNING

to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrect installation of the tire pressure monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tires. It is recommended that the monitoring module be installed and replaced by professional technicians from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider according to the installation instructions.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-DENZA approved electrical

CAUTION

accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.

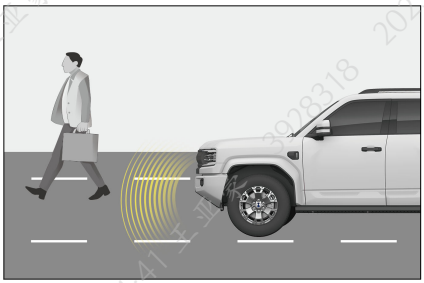
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires or tire rotations. Go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)

System Function

The Acoustic Vehicle Alert System(AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h<V≤20 km/h.
  - The broadcast volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 20 km/h<V≤30 km/h.
  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

Disabling/Enabling the System

- To turn on or off (not supported in some regions) the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, shift into Reverse and reverse slowly to check whether the sound can be heard. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Around View Monitoring (AVM)

Around View Monitoring (AVM), also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image information through seamless stitching of images from four wide-angle cameras installed at the front, rear, left, and right of the vehicle (a bird's-eye view image). This system helps the driver understand the blind spots around the vehicle, thereby improving awareness of the ground-level blind zones.

- AVM activation method:
  - To access the panoramic view, press the button on the steering wheel.
  - Tap the vehicle view button on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the panoramic view.
  - Shifting to "R" can forcibly start the AVM system.

  - Enter the panoramic view interface through the driver seat intelligent voice "Hi, BYD, open the panoramic view".
  - Turn on "D gear trigger" button on AVM setting interface so that AVM can be enabled through "D" gear.
- Tap the front, rear, right, or left area of the vehicle icon on the left. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section on the right.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.

  - Tap the radar icon in the AVM system to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. When the radar display is enabled, an obstacle warning is displayed as it is approached.
- Transparent around view: Tap the transparent vehicle button to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.
- 3D around view: Tap the 3D around view button (the button turns gray) to access this view.
- 3D around view: Tap the 3D around view button (the button lights up) to access this view.
- Settings: AVM settings include body color switching, radar triggering around view, steering linkage, completely transparent speed limit, D gear triggering and other options. Click the body color switching to switch the body color of the vehicle model in the AVM application and the body map in the overhead view. Steering linkage triggers the corresponding perspective based on scene adaptation.

AVM Icons	Function Instructions
	Around view of non-transparent vehicle
	Around view of transparent vehicle
	3D around view
	2D around view
	Front view
	Rear view
	Left view
	Right view
	2D view of two directions
	2D front view of two directions
	2D rear view of two directions
	3D transparency engine

- When the vehicle is just started, the image before last power-off is displayed for the transparent around view. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to move and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fish-eye cameras, so some displayed objects may be different from the actual ones in shape.
- The AVM system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. Be sure to observe the surroundings in other ways during the parking/driving process to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system; and when the AVM system is used for operating the vehicle, ensure that all doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the around view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.

WARNING

- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle is moving slowly, the transparent AVM function is affected by speed changes or multiple stops, causing misalignment between the images below the vehicle and those outside.
- When one or more cameras in the system are not working, the corresponding views go black.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Do not rely solely on the AVM system while driving, as it may not accurately detect objects or pedestrians in approaching areas. It is necessary to use all the rearview mirrors to make a comprehensive judgment.

Parking Assist

- During vehicle parking brake, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Parking Sensor Switch

- To enable or disable the reversing radar system, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.

- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found around the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

① Front right corner sensor

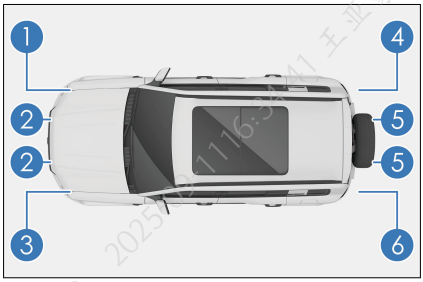
② Front center sensors

③ Front left corner sensor

④ Rear right corner sensor

⑤ Rear center sensor

⑥Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 300 to 700		Fast
About 0 to 300		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 300 to 600		Fast
About 0 to 300		Continuous

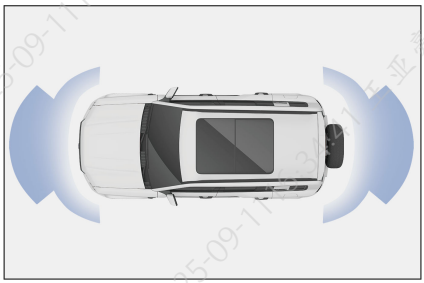
CAUTION

- The system has a blind spot range of 0–200 mm with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0–200 mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so the driver must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system is indicated by the message " Parking radar failed, please contact service" on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, macadam or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.

- The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.

- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for a service.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) system, and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB), comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System(TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control(HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

When "P" button is pressed and held, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases "P" button, CDP stops functioning.

Hill Descent Control(HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. Users can turn on or off the HDC function through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Intelligent Assist** setting interface. The main function of HDC is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator turns off.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - The user can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**→ **Steering Assist Mode**.
- Comfort parking
  - Comfort parking function: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Comfort Parking**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2-5 cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

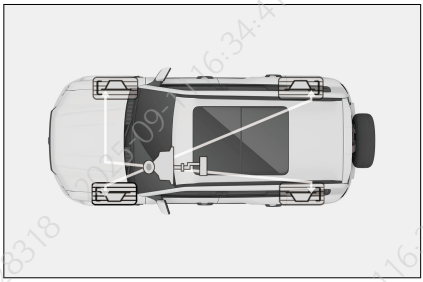
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off ESC, press and release the ESC OFF button. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch* is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC system

- When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.

- ESC system start and speed linkage
  - If the ESC system is turned off, when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold (80 km/h), the ESC system starts on its own.
- When ESC system is activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- ESC disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, press and hold the brake pedal. Never pulsate or repeatedly tapping the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may not function properly. While steering to avoid danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal to ensure the ABS functions properly.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead on:

- Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
- Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
- Driving on bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This system only helps you control steering when braking. Always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.

CAUTION

- When driving on wet, soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicle equipped with ABS may require longer braking distance than vehicle without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

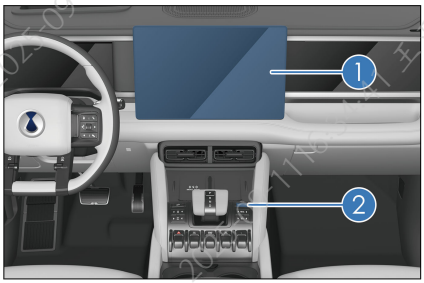
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment touchscreen functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Power button/Volume knob



Reset to factory settings

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping ⚙ → **System** → **Version**→ **Factory Reset**→ **Reset**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes, please wait patiently.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience infotainment system functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

Navigation Bar

: returns to the previous page or exits the program.

: returns to the homepage.

: goes to the vehicle settings screen.

: splits screen if applications support.

: goes to the app list screen.

: goes to the A/C settings screen.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: Zooms in an image or shows full screen. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

OTA Update

- The vehicle supports Over-the-Air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping → **System** → **Version** → **Version Update** .
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately, schedule an update or use mobile phone update according to your use of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is in Park, at a safe place with a stable network connection.
- Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before the upgrade.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the smart key/microswitch unlocking/locking, interior light switch, hazard warning light, and window switches.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it also fails, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

Intelligent Voice Assistant

Intelligent Voice Assistant responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up intelligent voice assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap .
  - Say the wake word: Hi, BYD.
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up.
- Then, you can give the instruction.
  - This may be "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23°C", or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". Intelligent voice assistant then performs the recognized instruction.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

Scenario Mode

Nap Mode

- Mode activated: When you needs a short rest, activate the nap mode and set the duration from the drop-down menu on the infotainment touchscreen. Tap "OK" to activate the mode, and tap "End Now" to exit the mode.
- Alarm settings: There will be an alarm at the end of the nap time. Tap "Cancel" to end it. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm will delay for a period of time by default and ring again when the time is up.
- Mode effect: In the nap mode, the driver's seat is automatically lowered to the default position, the A/C is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and systems such as the windows and the panoramic sunroof are automatically closed. The infotainment touchscreen displays the nap mode interface, the instrument cluster screen, and other screens go off.

CAUTION

- Make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park before activating the nap mode.

CAUTION

- Please close all doors and the back door before entering the nap mode.
- Before entering the nap mode, please pay attention to the vehicle endurance to avoid inconvenience.
- After the vehicle stops safely, please observe the bottom of the vehicle to prevent the engine exhaust pipe from igniting flammable materials (such as hay, dead leaves, wheat straw, etc.);
- Do not turn on nap mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not take a nap in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- To prevent rear passengers from being pinched or items from being damaged, ensure that no passengers and items are on the rear seats before you take a nap.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the nap mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park or is powered off, which is normal.

Camping Mode

- Mode activated: When camping outdoors, you can enable the camping mode by pulling down the profile options in the convenience bar of the central control screen or using voice.
- Alarm settings: Users can set the alarm clock in the camping mode. When the time arrives, the alarm clock will remind the user. Click "Close Alarm" to end the alarm. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm clock will extend a period of camping time by default, and the alarm clock will remind again after the time.
- Mode effect: After entering the camping mode, the windows, sunroof and sunshade will be automatically closed, the infotainment touchscreen will play the camping dynamic effect selected by the user, and the rest of the screens in the vehicle will be closed. At the same time, the vehicle will automatically adjust the body posture to ensure that the body posture is flat. After the user locks the vehicle, the lights will be automatically turned off.

CAUTION

- Make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park before activating the camping mode.
- Before entering the camping mode, please pay attention to the vehicle endurance to avoid inconvenience.
- Do not turn on camping mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not camp in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- The vehicle may automatically exit camping mode under certain conditions, such as air conditioning failure, low battery, or power-off. These scenarios are normal.

Wiping screen mode

- The user can enter the screen wiping mode through the sliding control bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen. After entering, the infotainment touchscreen is black and does not respond to any user touch operation except exit.

- Shield the touch function of infotainment touchscreen, which is convenient for users to wipe.

Speakers

- Devialet sound effect setting items of this vehicle include the sound field focus, sound features, headrest sound effect* and volume adjustment with speed, which can be set on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display** → **Audio** interface.

Devialet sound field focus

- Devialet sound field focus is divided into the whole vehicle, the front row and the rear row, and the use of Devialet focus technology can create a balanced sound field around the front and rear passengers.
- Full vehicle mode includes Devialet space sound effect and full vehicle custom adjustment of sound field. Devialet space sound can provide a more immersive music experience. Custom adjustment allows users to control the sound field of each direction according to their needs. Click the reset button in the upper right corner to restore the default value with one key.

Devialet sound features

- Devialet voice features are divided into six modes: classic, soft, dynamic, rock, vocal and custom.

Devialet head support sound effect*

- The sound effect of Devialet headrest is divided into three modes: surround mode, driving mode and exclusive mode. Users can switch between the three modes by clicking on demand.
  - Surround mode: Linkage headrests and interior speakers for sound enhancement.
  - Driving mode: Stay connected while accessing your phone and navigation voice.
  - Exclusive mode: Enjoy exclusive headrest music to keep navigation calls connected.

Volume adjusted with speed

- When the function is enabled, it effectively reduces the impact of environmental noises of road, tire, wind, engine and so on. The setting range is 0 ~ 5, where 0 is off, 1 ~ 5 correspond to different setting levels, and the default setting value is 3.

My Car

My car consists of vehicle control, driving behavior and vehicle health.

- Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control*.
  - Shortcut control: Shortcut control can be achieved by the left shortcut bar and the shortcut function of the card entrance at the bottom.
  - 3D vehicle model control: Users can click the hot area to operate the vehicle control.
  - Body color change: You can switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
  - Vehicle control customization: Users can click more to view all shortcut functions, and long press the shortcut function to drag the position.

REMINDER

- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Multi-screen Simulcast*

- The multi-screen broadcasting function is mainly applied to video playback, karaoke and other scenes. In the above scenes, the real-time picture of the current screen can be shared to the infotainment touchscreen, the front passenger screen and other devices, so as to realize the entertainment function of multi-screen synchronous video playback and karaoke in the cockpit.
- How to use
  - Click to enter the "My Application" interface, select multi-screen simulcast, select the application to be simulcast in the application, and drag the screen thumbnail to the target screen to realize multi-screen simulcast.
  - Tap the floating button in the simulcast supporting application to start the simulcast.

Phone Projection

Phone Projection

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system

REMINDER

turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.

- The initial setup process must be completed on the phone: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- The first time you connect wirelessly, you will need to pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. For best results, keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on while you complete the setup.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services whose names or logos are shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

- Connecting with a cable
  - Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- Switching between Apple CarPlay and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.

- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

- Connecting with a cable
  1. Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on this interface, or or in the shortcut bar.
  - To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.

- To use Android Auto on the infotainment touchscreen, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones at g.co/androidauto/ requirements undefined.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C Panel

① A/C ON/OFF

② Front windshield defroster

A/C Operation Interface

- To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → .

A/C auto mode

- Provides two options: **Eco** and **Comfort**.

Remotely controlled air conditioner running time

- Sets the time for remote A/C running.

Auto air recirculation

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Auto fan speed reduction during Bluetooth calls

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Front A/C Operation Interface

1	A/C ON/OFF
2	Auto mode
3	Cooling
4	Ventilator
5	Circulation mode
6	Front windshield defroster
7	Rear defroster
8	Max cooling
9	A/C settings
10	Driver's temperature control
11	Front passenger's temperature control
12	Synchronization button
13	Fan speed control

Function Definitions

Auto mode

- After tapping this button, its indicator lights up on the A/C panel, and compressor status, fan speed and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Cooling

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button, and then is displayed, and the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time and then is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is fresh air mode.

REMINDER

- When the "automatic recirculation when parking" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle and prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched on automatically after you shift into "P".

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- A/C temperature regulation
  - Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
  - When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield, The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Rear defroster

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windshield and side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

Fan speed control

- Fan Speed Adjustment on the A/C Interface
  - Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.
  - Tap to set fan speed to level 1, and tap to set to level 7.

Synchronization button

- The temperature setting, windshield setting and air outlet mode state of all temperature zones of the vehicle are controlled synchronously with the temperature zone of the driver.

Air distribution

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

: Air flows to the face level.

: Air flows to the foot level.

: Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to “LO" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, leaves or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.

- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent windows from fogging after the cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce odors by long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Keep the cabin clean.

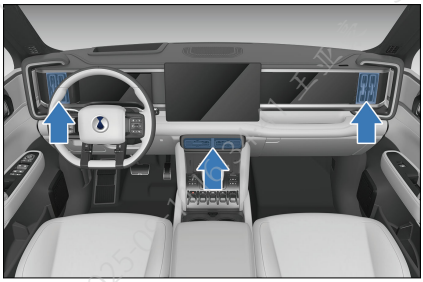
REMINDER

- If the odor prevention methods are useless, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

Vents

Front vents

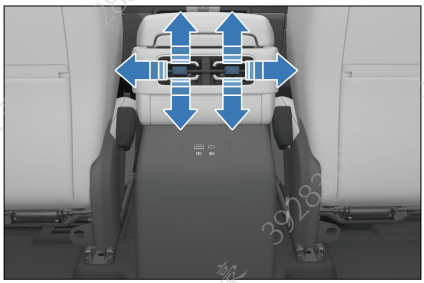
- Turn the vent stick to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.
- Slide the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle.



Rear vents

- Turn the vent stick to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.

- Slide the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle.



BYD App

BYD App*

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration*

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control*

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management*

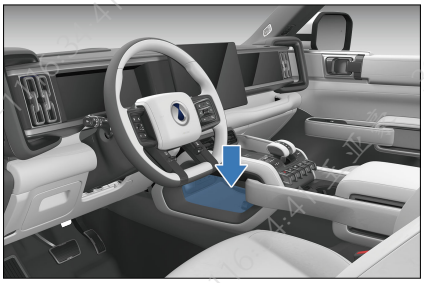
In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

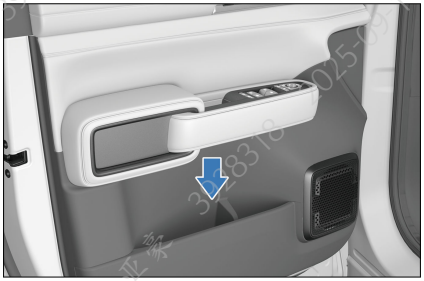
Center Console Storage Compartment

- The center console storage compartment can be used for storage of small items.



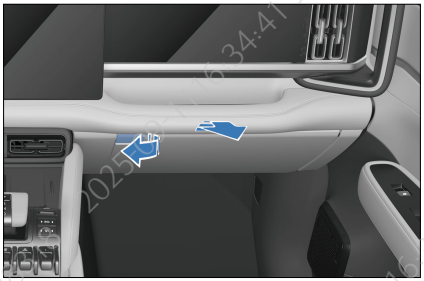
Door Bins

There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Glove Box

- Press the switch in the upper left corner to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.

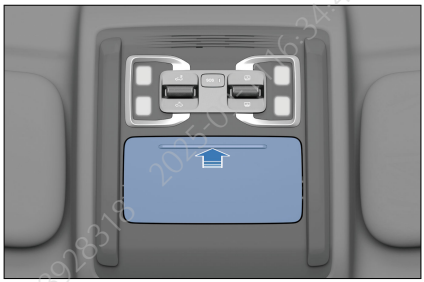


Seatback Pockets

There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines and newspapers. (The seatback pockets on your actual vehicle may differ.)

Glasses Case

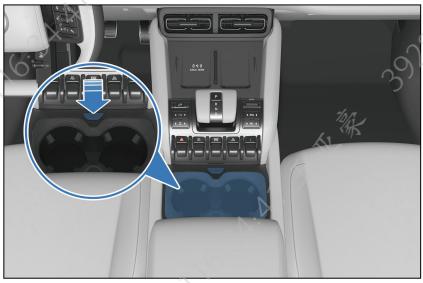
Press the lid of the case to open it.



Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

The front seat cup holder is located in front of the center console cubby.



Rear Seat Cup Holder

- Flip the rear seat armrest to use the cup holder.

Folding Status

Unfolding Status

CAUTION

- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.

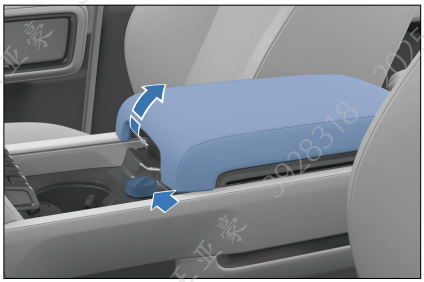
CAUTION

- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.
- Please keep the inside of the cup holder clean and free of debris, such as sand, leaves, etc.

Refrigerator

Refrigerator

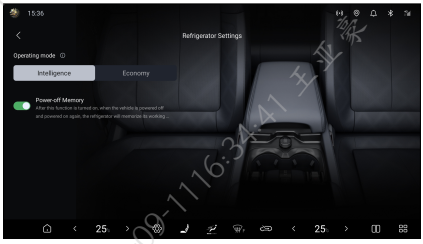
- The refrigerator is located in the center of the front seat, and can be opened by opening the refrigerator cover according to the direction shown in the figure.
- Press the key of the refrigerator as shown in the figure to switch between the three states of "off", "cooling" and "heating".



- Press and hold the refrigerator knob for more than three seconds to shut off the refrigerator.
- When the refrigerator function is turned on, turn the refrigerator knob clockwise to increase the set temperature and counterclockwise to decrease the set temperature.

Refrigerator Settings

- Enter the refrigerator setting interface by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → Refrigerator App.
- Refrigerator temperature controls
  - Refrigerating temperature can be adjusted at -6 °C ~ 6 °C
  - The heating temperature can be adjusted at 35 °C ~ 50 °C.
- Delayed power off
  - When the function is enabled, the refrigerator continues to operate for a set period of time after the vehicle is powered off, which consumes additional vehicle power. There are 1-12h gears available for the duration.
  - When the function is disabled, the refrigerator stops working after the vehicle is powered off.



- Power-off memory
  - Press this button to enable the power-off memory function. If the vehicle is restarted after powering off, the refrigerator is in the same state as that before powering off.

- Press this button again to turn off the power-off memory function. When the vehicle is powered off and started again, the refrigerator will remain closed.

Remote opening and reminding function

- Refrigerator cooling/heating remote start
  - Users can remotely control the refrigerator to turn on or off cooling/heating by operating the BYD App.
- Reminder of items left behind
  - If the vehicle is powered down with the refrigerator in cooling or heating mode and items are detected inside, the instrument will give a prompt "There are articles in the refrigerator, please take them away in time".
- Reminder of refrigerator door not closed
  - When the refrigerator door is opened for 1 minute in the working state, the infotainment touchscreen will prompt "The refrigerator door is not closed, please close the refrigerator door in time".
- Refrigerator long working reminder
  - If the refrigerator remains in the cooling or heating state with no items inside for one hour, the infotainment touchscreen prompts "No items present. Please turn off the refrigerator".
- Heating explosion-proof reminder
  - When the refrigerator is switched from the non-heating state to the heating state, the infotainment touchscreen prompts that "the heating function has been turned on, please do not place explosive articles such as cola in the refrigerator".

WARNING

- Before heating, make sure that there are no flammable and explosive items, and no items that expand, deteriorate or volatilize easily when heated (like lighter, cola, alcohol or wet wipes).
- Before starting the refrigeration below 0 °C, it is necessary to confirm that there are no items in the refrigerator that are easy to expand due to cold, such as carbonated drinks.
- If there are water and other stains on the inner wall of the refrigerator, please deal with them in time to avoid the breeding of bacteria and the odor of the refrigerator.
- Do not place unsealed containers of beverages in the refrigerator to avoid spillage when the vehicle is running.
- With the vehicle running, make sure the refrigerator door is closed to prevent articles from flying out of the refrigerator.
- Do not place fragile, perishable or smelly items in the refrigerator. If do, take away them in time.
- Do not place overheated or corrosive objects in the refrigerator to avoid damage to the refrigerator.
- Do not put sharp objects in the refrigerator, and do not scrape the inner wall with sharp objects.
- When placing articles, the air outlet of the refrigerator should not be blocked and water should not enter the air inlet, so as not to affect the heat dissipation or even damage the refrigerator.

WARNING

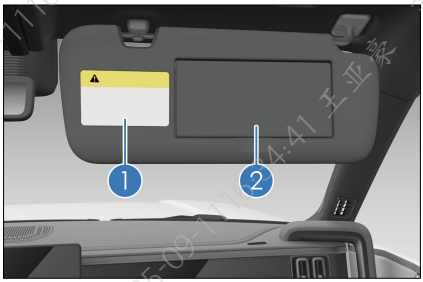
- Do not rinse the refrigerator or soak the refrigerator in water for cleaning.
- Turn off all power before cleaning the refrigerator. Clean the refrigerator with a slightly damp cloth and avoid using harsh detergents such as bleach or acidic cleaners, as they may cause corrosion to the refrigerator. Avoid using hard objects such as steel balls or iron brushes to avoid scratching the surface of the refrigerator.
- The reminder function can identify heavy objects, such as apples, drinks, etc.; light objects may not be identified, such as a single grape, but when the condensed water accumulates to a certain extent, the dielectric constant reaches the threshold of object detection, and the object detection module will judge the condensed water as an object.
- The operating temperature of the compressor should be maintained within an appropriate range. Temperatures that are excessively high or low may prevent the compressor from initiating the refrigeration process.

Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

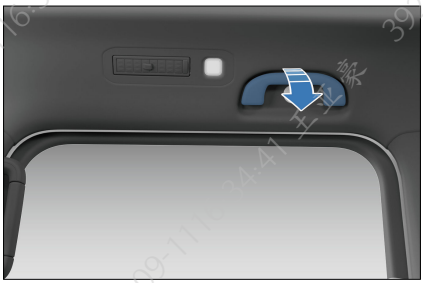
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Safety Handles

Pull the safety handle down for use. Simply let go and allow it to return to its default position.



USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB.

It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.

- It is recommended to use USB storage devices up to 128GB with FAT32 format.

CAUTION

- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

- There are two ports installed in the front lower layer of the auxiliary console.

  ① Type-C charge port

  ② Type-A data transmission port

- One Type-C fast charger is set at the rear of the lower part of the auxiliary dashboard.

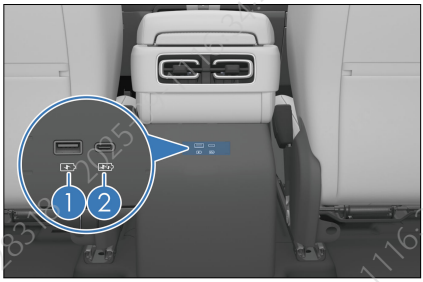
- The ports can be used only when the ignition is on.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- There are two USB ports behind the center console cubby.

  ① Type-A connector

  ② Type-C connector



- The ports can be used only when the ignition is on.

On-board Power Supply

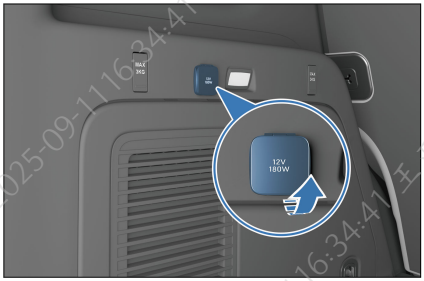
- The standby power can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 15 A and electrical power of less than 180 W.
- The 12 V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.

Front 12 V Power Outlet

The front 12 V power supply is located under the auxiliary instrument panel.

Rear row 12V Power Outlet

It is located in the trunk.



CAUTION

- In order to prevent the fuse from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed the total load of the vehicle 12V/180 W.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the drive motor is not running.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may result.

Wireless Phone Charger*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the front center console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone on the non-slip rubber pad in the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the central infotainment screen.

- The charger uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to the phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing

CAUTION

metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.

- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the wireless charging system of the mobile phone is faulty and cannot be used normally, it is recommended that you contact the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status for a long time while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger rubber pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charger area), or charging may fail.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.

CAUTION

- DENZA makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- To avoid burning bank cards or others with chips, do not place them between the phone and its case during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If the wireless charging still fails, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the charging dock remains occupied after the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened, a tone sounds

REMINDER

from the instrument cluster and a warning text is displayed for five seconds.

- The setting icon for wireless phone charging can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum running condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Repeated short distances are driven within 8 km, and the outside temperature is below zero.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

- **First maintenance:**
  - The vehicle must be maintained at six months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.
  - First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.
- **Routine maintenance:**
  - Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance:

After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake friction block and brake discs	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Chassis screws	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Ball pin and dust boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Tire wear	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary; Under severe working conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Spare tire looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials or corrosion on connections between the EPS ECU and motor	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft.	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve*, thermal insulation cotton*, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Fasteners such as high-voltage distribution box and DC charging distribution box	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Deformation of or oil stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Initial down tilt of low beam	Calibrate every 12 months or 20,000 km
HEPA filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check and replace the A/C filter in time.
Transmission filter cover	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
The fastening of door locks and lock bolts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Check the active suspension system*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Electric fan*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Loose cooling fan grounding and connectors	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuse box and domain controller power terminal connection looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Damage of connectors inside and outside the hood	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering shaft lock*	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Electric horn	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items:

Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
Front and rear drive gear oil	Check and replace the oil every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Check and replace front drive differential gear oil	Replace at 18 months or 23,500 km for the first time; check and replace with the maintenance time of front and rear drive gear oil afterwards
Transmission filter element*	Replace the filter (press filter) element every four years or 60,000 km
Check active suspension hydraulic oil fluid level*	Check at 48 months or 80,000 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Replace active suspension hydraulic oil*	Replace every 100000 km
Check the active suspension energy accumulator*	Check at 48 months or 80,000 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.

Engine maintenance mileage:

Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
Engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Gasoline detergent	Add every 12 months or 10,000 km except the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 33,500 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Check and replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and replace every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary
Dust filter of charcoal canister	Replace every two years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance.
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt is displayed or the fuel indicator turns yellow on the instrument cluster.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please

REMINDER

fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

- In following severe working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle.
  - The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient

REMINDER

temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (<15 min) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads
  - Driving in cold weather
  - Frequent or sudden braking
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer
  - Use as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Frequent overloading.

Maintenance Instructions for Special Working Conditions

- Special working conditions include general severe working conditions and off-road working conditions. After driving under special working conditions, you can check the following items by yourself. If there is any abnormality, please contact the authorized service center of DENZA Automobile in time.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Wheel assembly	Rim: After each cross-country drive on muddy terrain, thoroughly clean the bottom of the wheel rims, groove structures, or other hard-to-reach areas where mud tends to accumulate. Wheels: Clean mud or pebbles accumulated on the tire surfaces, and check for tire wear.
Exhaust line connection	Check for leaks, loose fastenings, and damage.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Side door handles	Clean the vehicle handles using a vacuum cleaner and rinse them with clean water, paying special attention to areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Side door lock bodies & trunk lock body	Clean lock body with a vacuum cleaner, paying particular attention to the areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Back door movable guide block and bolt, back door fixed guide block and bolt	Check whether there are white marks or dirt on the surface of the guide block, and wipe it clean if necessary. Whether there is abnormal wear or damage, whether the fixation is firm, and if necessary, replace the guide block. Ensure that the surface difference of the back door is more than 2mm lower than side wall.
Check the back door lock, lock ring and bolt	Check whether the back door lock and lock ring are bumped or worn abnormally, and whether they are fixed firmly. If there is any collision, please adjust the lock ring in time and replace the components if necessary. Ensure that the surface difference of the back door is more than 2mm lower than side wall.
Check that the back door has no limit stop and ball stud	Check whether the ball stud is abnormally loosened.
Woofer	In the Devialet Sound Field Focus → Custom mode, listen to each speaker to see if it sounds normally.
Engine sound simulator	1. Check for water ingress. 2. Drive slowly and listen to verify whether the sound of the engine sound simulator is normal.
Panoramic camera Other cameras	1. Check the camera body for bumps and deformations; Check the lens for scratches, cracks, dirt blockings, etc. 2. Check whether the panoramic picture is displayed normally, whether there is a black screen, whether the image is deformed, etc.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Front mmWave radars Corner mmWave radars	1. Check the mmWave radar surfaces and bumper areas for dents, scratches, or deformation. 2. Check the radar surfaces for dust and mud. 3. Check whether the instrument alarms. 4. Check whether the radars function normally.
Parking probe	1. Check whether the matching parts of parking probe, rubber ring and other matching parts are filled with sand and dust, if so, clean them; 2. Check the probe surface for damages such as abrasion, collision mark and deformation; 3.Check whether the instrument alarms.
Front laser radar assembly	1. Check the laser radar for dents, scratches, or deformation. 2.Record a video with a smartphone to observe whether the laser radar is flashing normally. 3.Check whether the instrument alarms.
Ultrasonic radar probe	1. Check the probe surface for damages such as scratches and dents. 2. Check whether the probe functions normally.
Laser radar	1. Check the laser radar for dents, scratches, or deformation. 2.Record a video with a smartphone to observe whether the laser radar is flashing normally. 3.Check whether the instrument alarms.
Front view camera and DVR camera	1. Check whether the outside of the front windshield is covered with ice, snow, fog, frost, etc.

Checks Item	Inspection method
	2. Check whether the inside of the windshield or the surface of the camera is fogged or frosted, and if so, turn on the air conditioner to defrost. 3.Check whether the instrument alarms.

General severe working conditions

- Maintenance should be observed and performed more frequently in general severe service conditions. In case of frequent driving under the following severe working conditions, it is recommended that you contact the authorized service center of DENZA Automobile at least once every three months for maintenance.
- General severe working conditions include (but are not limited to) the following:
  - Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
  - Driving on rough/muddy roads.
  - Driving in mountainous conditions.
  - Driving with a trailer
- The maintenance items under general severe working conditions are as follows:

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Check the air filter element	General severe working conditions
Check the front, rear, left, right, upper and lower swing assemblies.	General severe working conditions
Check longitudinal EHS differential vent plug	General severe working conditions
Check the stabilizer bar assembly.	General severe working conditions
Check the front/middle/rear bottom guard assembly.	General severe working conditions
Check and replace hydraulic suspension fluid.	General severe working conditions
Check the drive halfshaft.	General severe working conditions
Check the brake assembly.	General severe working conditions
Back door movable guide block and bolt, back door fixed guide block and bolt	General severe working conditions
Check the back door lock, lock ring and bolt	General severe working conditions

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Check that the back door has no limit stop and ball stud	General severe working conditions
Check whether sand enters the turbocharger.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check whether sand enters the oil dipstick	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the radiator, condenser, oil cooler, intercooler and fan.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Replace the air conditioner filter element.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the engine inlet valve.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the air conditioning inlet valve.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the active suspension system*	General severe working conditions
Insulation detection	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Potential detection	General severe working conditions
Checks tire pressure sensor	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Check radiator for muds and pebbles and clean as necessary.	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Torque of connector and DC positive fastener of bidirectional on-board power supply assembly	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Replace the oil filter.	Driving in dusty or sandy conditions, or towing a trailer
Check the steering gear assembly.	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads, or towing a trailer
Check the trailer hitch assembly.	Driving with a trailer

Note: The actual maintenance items may be slightly different from those in the above table due to the severity of working conditions, and the details shall be subject to the notification of DENZA Automobile Authorized Service Center before maintenance.

Off-road conditions

- Off-road working conditions are more severe than general bad working conditions, and the requirements for the state of the vehicle are higher. If you need to drive off-road, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before and after off-road to conduct a comprehensive inspection of your vehicle, so as to find problems

immediately and keep your car in the best condition.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd., and by a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of DENZA.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, the vehicle may need to be checked or repaired, and it is recommended to send the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.
  - High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.

- "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
- The engine leaks oil or water.
- The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
- A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint

is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.

- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Vehicle Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances which will cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road on which anti-freeze has been scattered.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings and insect carcasses get stuck.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings or chemicals.
  - Vehicles visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently in the shade before washing it.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the combination lights, do not wipe their surface with chemical solvents such as gasoline, alcohol, lacquer

CAUTION

thinner, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so can cause the combination light casings to crack.

- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the staff of the vehicle wash station for the safest wash procedure for the paint surface is a better choice.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a high-quality foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

REMINDER

- After off-road in the desert, it is recommended to clean sand and stones on the force arm of the limiter and apply oil for lubrication.

A/C Control Panel, Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel, and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.

CAUTION

- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be

CAUTION

taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.

CAUTION

- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator expansion tank should be checked monthly.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need

to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

WARNING

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Panoramic Sunroof Maintenance

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the front of rear glass (with the front glass fully opened) frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result poor drainage of the sunroof.
- Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage.
- When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
- The sunroof freezes easily in winter. Forcibly opening the frozen sunroof will damage sealing strips or other

parts. Instead, warm up the vehicle and turn on the A/C system to accelerate the melting of snow and ice on the sunroof. Try to open the sunroof after the temperature inside reaches a certain level. Dry the residual moisture on the sunroof to prevent it from freezing.

- Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, sunroof is not to be opened when it is raining or when the vehicle is being cleaned.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Add fuel.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

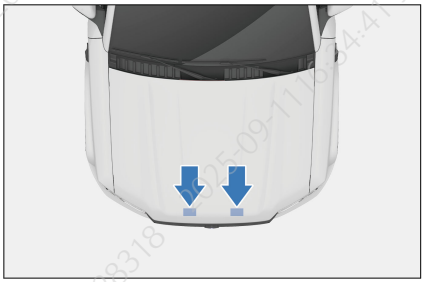
Opening the Hood

1. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.

2. Raise the hood to an appropriate height; then it will automatically rise to the open state.

Closing the Hood

1. Pull the hood down to a certain height, push it down with a little force until it is half-locked, and then slowly press the blue area in the picture with both hands until the hood is fully locked and closed. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the lines.



2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.
- Do not close the hood with one hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.

REMINDER

- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Engine

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine is not started for a long time, the carbon tank will be saturated, causing the risk of fuel leakage, so the carbon tank needs to be desorbed regularly.
- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine and exits until the carbon tank load meets the requirements.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N" gear.
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Engine Oil

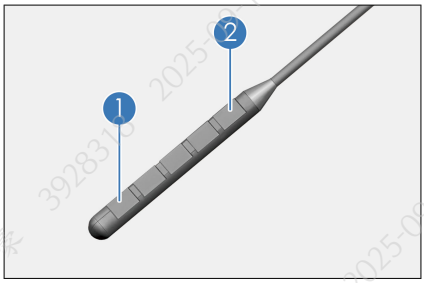
- Be sure to use the correct engine oil specification.
- Be sure to check the motor oil specifications on the packaging container when purchasing, the specifications must conform to the vehicle use.

Recommended motor oil

- Motor oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality and purified motor oil should be preferred. DENZA strongly suggests you to use the original engine oil.
- Motor oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather and road conditions. The new engine may have a higher fuel consumption rate.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine to the normal operating temperature, and then stop the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and condition, and check whether the level is between ① and ②. Fill or replace motor oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back



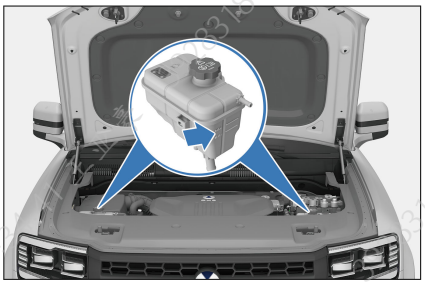
- When the low oil pressure warning lamp is on, add motor oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to spill the motor oil on vehicle components.
- Oil, engine components and the exhaust system are high-temperature components that can cause burns. Be careful and wear protective garment when working in the engine compartment.
- Long-term exposure to or frequent contact with used motor oil can cause skin diseases. When this kind of oil sticks to the skin, it can be washed with soapy water and clean water.

Cooling System

- It is required that the level in the coolant expansion tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.



- Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
- Do not add any admixture.
- Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

CAUTION

- Do not use tap water, so as to avoid cooling system damage.
- To avoid incompatible coolants and additives, do not apply

CAUTION

additives like rust remover to the cooling system.

Radiator and Condenser

If radiator and condenser are dirty or in uncertain conditions, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.
- To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not operate them yourself.

Electronic fan

- If the vehicle is driven in desert, mud, muddy water and other special road conditions for a long time, mud/sand and other foreign matters will intrude into the electronic fan. It is recommended to clean and maintain the electronic fan in time. If it is not cleaned in time, it may cause abnormal vibration of the electronic fan, resulting in abnormal noise, affecting driving comfort. In serious cases, it may cause abnormal damage to the electronic fan.

CAUTION

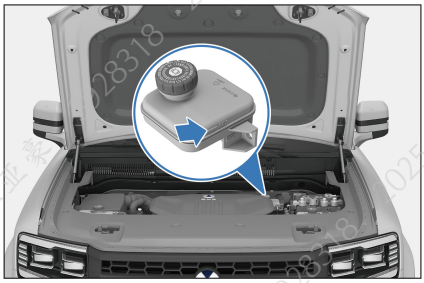
- The cleaning and maintenance of the electronic fan is recommended to be carried out by the professionals of the authorized dealer of DENZA. When using the air gun or water gun to clean fan, the following contents should be paid attention to:

CAUTION

- Before cleaning the electronic fan, ensure that the vehicle is in cold state (or after parking for 30 minutes), and ensure that the vehicle is in power-off state.
- When using the water gun to clean fan, try to avoid direct water flow to the fan connector and other harness connectors/interfaces.
- After the fan is cleaned, use a dry towel to clean water stains on the harness interface/connector in time.

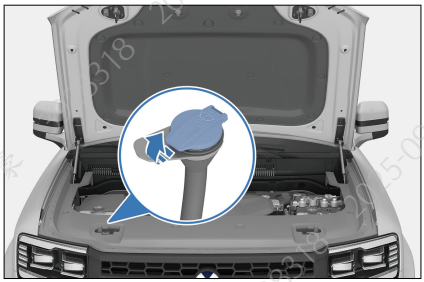
Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



Windshield Washer

- The windshield washer reservoir is located behind the right headlamp in the front compartment. Remove the cover to check the fluid level in the reservoir.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.
- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blade Maintenance

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days) even if it doesn't rain.
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** to enable front/rear wiper check. The wipers rotate out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tire

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.

WARNING

- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle

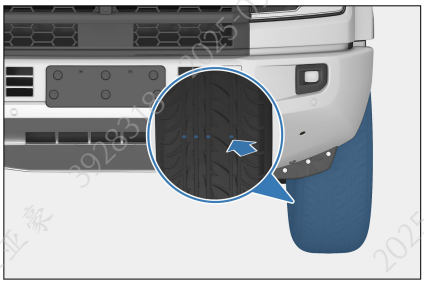
CAUTION

or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.

- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.



- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

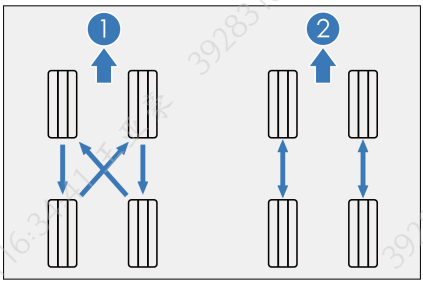
Tire Rotation

In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.

- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional" , which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tires. See the illustration.

① Non-directional tires

② Directional tires



- After tire replacement, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at DENZA authorized dealers or service providers. Please consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood fuse box is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The positive fuse box is under the front passenger's seat and beside the low-voltage battery.
- The fuel pump fuse box is located on the left side of the engine compartment.
- The suspension fuse box is located above the right front wheel hubcap, in front of the air cleaner.
- The positive fuse box of the front compartment is located above the metal sheet of the left front wheel housing and below the gutter.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other object to replace fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- After locking the vehicle and arming the anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.
- Magnetic fields generated by nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters may interfere with the normal operation of the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign on the auxiliary dashboard.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.

If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If the vehicle experiences a fault and the instrument panel displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center," immediately pull over to a safe location and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

WARNING

- If the 400 V high-voltage circuit components or orange cables are found to be damaged after a vehicle accident, do not touch them directly to avoid injury caused by electric shock or burns.
- If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a risk of delayed fire, in which case the vehicle or the damaged battery needs to be placed under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area to prevent fire.

If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see ***P115***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

If the starter motor cranks the engine at normal speed but the engine will not start:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting an Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If the engine is flooded, the following operations can be performed manually:
  1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N" gear.
  2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.
- If the engine has been started for five seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start continuously, and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, it is recommended not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle.

Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place and turn on the hazard warning light.

- Turn on the Hazard Warning Light.
- Try to start the engine again.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to wait for the engine coolant to cool down to the normal range of temperature before opening the expansion tank. While the engine is running, add coolant to the upper scale mark, tighten the cap, and then start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury from high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank when the engine or radiator is still hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the

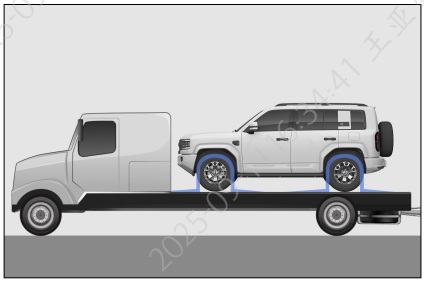
organization you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Common towing methods include:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.

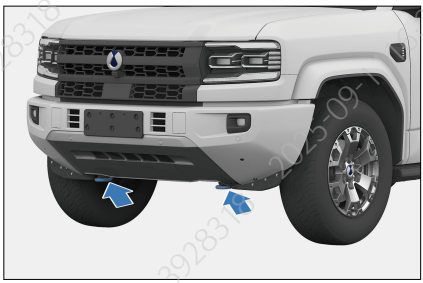


CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

- The front towing hook is located below both sides of the front bumper, as shown in the figure.



- The rear towing hook is located on the right rear side of the vehicle, as shown in the figure.

- If the vehicle is stuck and underpinning accident, please contact professional rescue or call the customer service hotline.
- In an emergency, when the vehicle is rescued or the towing hook is needed to rescue other trapped vehicles, please follow the following

precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.

- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.
- The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
- The towed vehicle must be in Neutral.
- The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
- The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
- Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
- The towing vehicle must be in good conditions, with a tow speed no more than 5km/h.
- Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
- When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used (in correct way).

WARNING

- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Press the "P" button to engage the EPB.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can cause too severe damage for the tire to be repaired.

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap. The on-board tools include reflective vest, triangle warning plate, jack, jack rocker, wheel wrench, wheel nut cover removal clip, double-ended jack, special sleeve for anti-theft nut, removal socket for spare tire cover, conversion socket spare tire removal, and charging connector.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the Warning Triangle

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. Ensure the red side is facing oncoming traffic to warn other drivers.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.

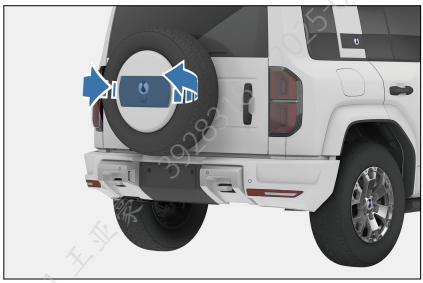
Using the Spare Tire

Spare Tire Positions

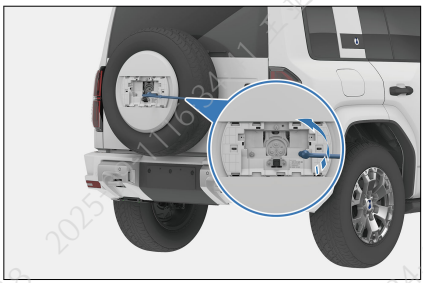
- The spare tire is stored on the back door.

Taking out the spare tire

1. Put your hand into one of the four corners of the grooves on both sides of the spare tire cover trim panel, and disassemble the spare tire cover trim panel from the rear of the vehicle to both sides.

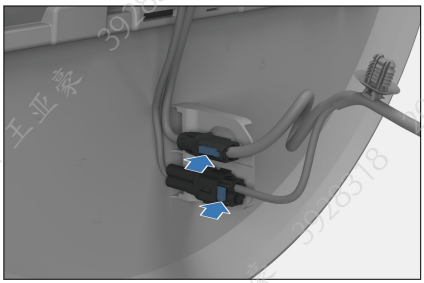


2. Remove the bolts on the spare tire cover plate in the counterclockwise direction with the combination of No.10 adapter socket and wheel wrench.

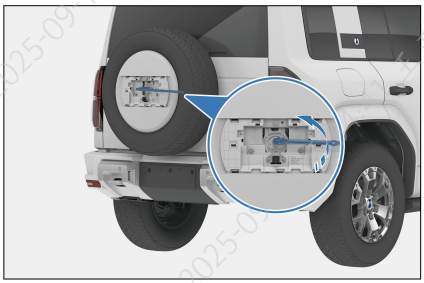


3. Turn the spare tire cover slightly outward to expose the harness and camera connector on the back, and

unplug the harness and camera connector.



4. Remove the bolts on the mounting plate of the spare tire cover plate in the counterclockwise direction with the combination of No.10 adapter socket and wheel wrench.



5. Remove the spare tire retaining nut with the wheel nut wrench supplied with the vehicle.

6. Removing the Spare Tire.

REMINDER

- After removing the spare tire cover trim panel, place it with the appearance side up to avoid scratching the paint surface.

CAUTION

- Do not knock the camera during removal to avoid damage.
- Pay attention to the wheel hub protection when disassembling and assembling the spare tire.

Store the flat tire

- When collecting the flat tire, fix the tire in the reverse order of the above removal steps, and tighten the bolts on the spare tire cover plate to prevent the spare tire cover plate from loosening and causing abnormal noise, which will also shorten the service life of the parts.

CAUTION

- When storing the spare tire, reset the damping block of the spare tire cover, or the spare tire cover will make abnormal noise.
- Do not bump the camera in the process of installing the deflated tire to avoid damaging the camera.
- Use the in-vehicle wheel wrench to tighten the retaining nut of the flat tire.

Replacement of the Spare Tire

Wedging the wheel

1. Wedge the tire diagonally against the flat tire to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

- To do so, place the wedges in front of the front wheels or behind rear wheels.

Loosening lug nuts

2. Remove the decorative cover of the lug nut with the lug nut cover removal clip in the vehicle tools.

3. Loose all the lug nuts on the flat tire.

- Loosen lug nuts before raising the vehicle.
- Loosen the nuts by turning them anticlockwise.

REMINDER

- Hold the end of the wrench and press it down, and do not allow it to slide off the nut.
- Do not remove the nut, and just loosen it by one to two turns.

WARNING

- Do not apply motor oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

Positioning the jack

4. Place the jack at a proper jacking point as shown in the picture.

- Ensure that the jack is placed on a flat and solid ground.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the jack is properly raising the vehicle, otherwise it may damage the vehicle.

WARNING

- When you jack up the vehicle, observe the following rules to reduce the likelihood of injuries:

WARNING

- Do not have any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack. Otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- Do not power on the vehicle when it is being jacked up.
- Park the vehicle on flat and solid ground, activate the parking controls and put the gearshift lever in Neutral. If needed, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.
- Ensure that the jack is placed at the correct jacking point. Jacking up the vehicle at an incorrect jack point will damage the vehicle or tip the vehicle off the jack, causing personal injuries.

Jacking up the vehicle

5. After confirming that the vehicle has no passenger onboard, jack up the vehicle to a height allowing for spare tire installation.

- Installing a spare tire requires more distance from the ground than removing a deflated one.

- When lifting the vehicle, insert the jack rocker into the jack (for loose coupling) and rotate it clockwise.
- When the jack is in contact with the vehicle and begins to lift the vehicle, verify again that the jack is in the correct position.

WARNING

- Never get under a vehicle supported only by a jack.

Replacing wheels

6. Remove wheel nuts, replace the tire, and place the replaced tire aside. Roll the spare tire to the mounting position, and align the bolts with the wheel holes. Lift the spare tire until the top bolt goes through the lug hole.

- Rotate the tire and push it in until all other bolts are through the holes.
- Before replacing the tire, remove corrosion from the mounting surface with a wire brush or other tools.

CAUTION

- When you install a wheel, ensure that the mounting position is contacted well, otherwise loose lug nuts will cause the wheel to come off during driving.

Reinstalling lug nuts

7. Reinstall all lug nuts.

- When reinstalling lug nuts, tighten the lug nuts by hand to the greatest extent, then push the wheel backward and tighten the lug nuts further.

WARNING

- Do not apply engine oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts, as this can over-tighten the nuts and thus damage the bolts. The loose nuts so caused would lead

WARNING

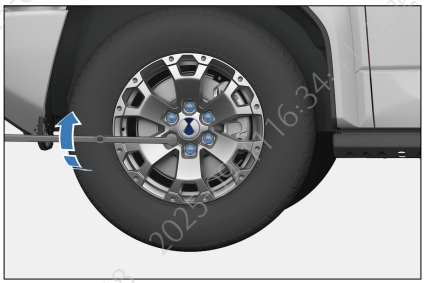
the wheels to come off, causing serious accidents.

- Clean the motor oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts.
- The conical surface of the nut should be inward. If the nut is installed reversely, it may cause serious accidents.

Lowering the vehicle

8. Lower the vehicle completely, tighten the lug nuts, and install the decorative cover for lug nuts.

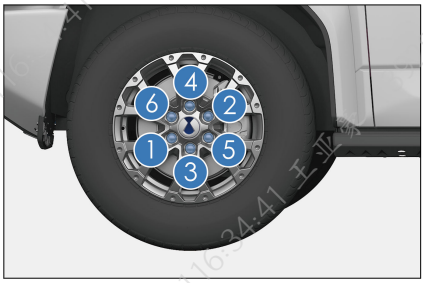
- Lower the vehicle by twiddling the jack lever counterclockwise.



REMINDER

- Tighten the nuts with a lug nut wrench. Do not use other tools or any lever other than your hands, such as hammers, tubes, or feet.
- Make sure the wrench is securely clamping around the nut.

- Tighten the nuts in the sequence shown, each a bit a time. Repeat the action until all nuts are tightened.



CAUTION

- Before lowering the vehicle, make sure that no part of your body and no person in the vicinity of the vehicle will be injured by the vehicle's descent.
- Lug nuts must be torqued to 140 N · m after wheel replacement. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

After wheel replacement

9. Check the pressure of the replaced tire.

- Adjust the tire pressure to the specification. If the pressure is lower than the specification, slowly drive to a nearby service station to inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- Be sure to mount the tire valve cap, otherwise dust and moisture will enter the valve stem and cause air leakage. If the valve cap is lost, use a new one as soon as possible.

10. Properly store all tools, the jack, and the flat tire.

- Use a torque wrench to tighten all lug nuts to the specified torque value after replacing the wheel.
- Have the flat tire repaired by a technician.

REMINDER

- Before driving, you should verify that all tools, jacks, and flat tires are kept in a storage area to reduce the possibility of personal injury in case of collision or emergency braking.
- Observe the maximum speed limit of 80km/h when using a non-full-size spare wheel on the road.
- Do not use the spare tire for a long time. It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire repair and replacement as soon as possible.

08 TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	4888
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1970
Height (mm)	1920
Wheelbase (mm)	2800
Front track (mm)	1670
Rear track (mm)	1670
Front overhang (mm)	926
Rear overhang (mm)	1162
Approach angle (°)	34
Departure angle (°)	29

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Model	Configuration 1	Configuration 2
Curb weight (kg)	2940	3035
Front axle load (kg)	1490	1490
Rear axle load (kg)	1450	1450
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	3402	3402
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1600	1600
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1802	1802
Number of occupants (persons)	5	5

Engine

Item	Parameter
Engine model	BYD476ZQF
Engine type	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (mL)	1497
Rated power/speed (kW/rpm)	143/5400
Maximum net power/speed (kW/rpm)	135/5400
Maximum torque/speed (N · m/rpm)	273 /(2000-4800)
Emission standard	China VI B emission standard

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	Front control module: TZ220XYAB Rear control module: TZ200XYA
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Longitudinal/ Intelligent 4WD
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front control module: 80/5093/150 Rear control module: 80/6367/120
Peak power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front control module: 200/18000/360 Rear control module: 285/18000/400

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter
WLTC Fuel consumption (L/100 km)	10.92
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180
Maximum gradeability (%)	100

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	265/65

Item	Parameter
Tire pressure (kPa)	250
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	<10

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Passive suspension	Active suspension
Front toe-in (side) (°)	0.15°±0.08°	0.08°±0.08°
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.3°±0.16°	0.16°±0.16°
Front toe-in difference (side) (°)	≤0.04°	≤0.04°
Front camber (°)	-0.14°±0.5°	-0.34°±0.5°
Front camber difference (°)	≤0.5°	≤0.5°
Kingpin caster angle (°)	5.28°±0.75°	5.55°±0.75°
Kingpin caster angle difference (°)	≤0.5°	≤0.5°
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.36°±0.75°	12.77°±0.75°
Kingpin inclination angle difference (°)	≤0.5°	≤0.5°
Rear toe-in (side) (°)	0.005°±0.08°	0.08°±0.08°
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.01°±0.16°	0.16°±0.16°
Rear toe-in difference (side) (°)	≤0.04°	≤0.04°
Rear camber (°)	0.5°±0.5°	0.06°±0.5°
Rear camber difference (°)	≤0.5°	≤0.5°

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	5
Standard thickness of front brake disc (mm)	Floating caliper: 32 Fixed caliper: 34
Minimum thickness of front brake disc (mm)	Floating caliper: 30

Item	Parameter
	Fixed caliper: 32
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	25
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	23
Standard thickness of front friction plate (mm)	Floating caliper: 10.5 Fixed caliper: 9.85
Minimum thickness of front friction plate (mm)	Floating caliper: 2.5 Fixed caliper: 2.75
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	12
Minimum thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	2.5

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	54

Seats

Item	Parameter
Fore and aft positions for front seats (cushion depth measured)	50 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	23°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	22° forward and 78° backward from the designed position; slide rail: 200mm forward and 50mm backward; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats (cushion depth measured)	No slide rail
Seatback angle of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	27°
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	4.5 backward

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
BYD476ZQF engine oil type	0W-20 or C5 0W-20 and meets the SP specification
BYD476ZQF engine oil amount (L)	Replace engine oil filter: 4.5±0.15; Do not replace engine oil filter: 4.2±0.15
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	Front motor 5.7±0.1 Rear motor 2.8±0.1
EHS differential gear oil type	Castrol GL-5-80W-90; Total GL-5-80W-90
EHS differential gear oil amount (L)	1.3±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.3±0.2
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol coolant: Antifreeze freezing point: -40°C (cold-resistant)
Engine coolant amount (L)	10.5±0.5
Motor and motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol coolant: Antifreeze freezing point: -40°C (cold-resistant)
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	11±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may affect vehicle performance, and could result in malfunctions or component damage.

Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

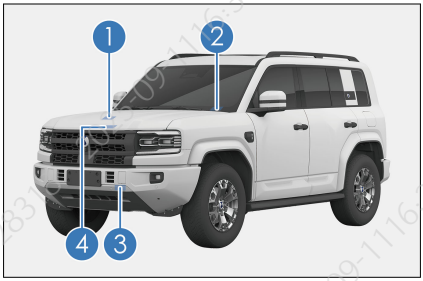
VIN attaching positions:

① Vertical EHS motor housing underside

② On the left front corner of the upper dashboard body

③ Upper left side of front impact beam

④ On the left side above the lock ring of the front hood inner panel

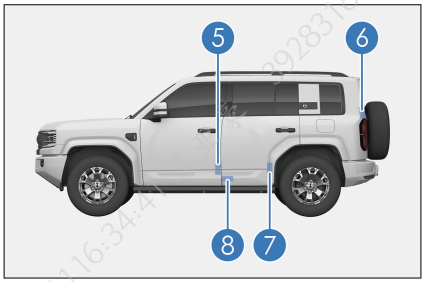


⑤ On the lower left corner of the front left door

⑥ On the metal sheet plane on the right side of the back door

⑦ On the left rear wheel envelope

⑧ At the door sill metal plate plane



VIN engraving position:

On the righ side frame rail

Under the front passenger's seat

Note: After connecting the VDS, the VIN can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.

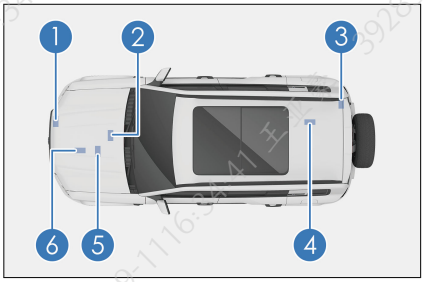
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of the front drive motor are attached on the inner panel of the hood.

②The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the bottom of the front drive assembly rear box

③ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are attached on the right part of the sheet metal surface on the trunk lid.

④ The model and number of the rear drive motor are engraved on the bottom of the front box on the side of the oil drain hole of the rear drive assembly.



⑤ The model and serial number of the engine are engraved on the assembly cylinder.

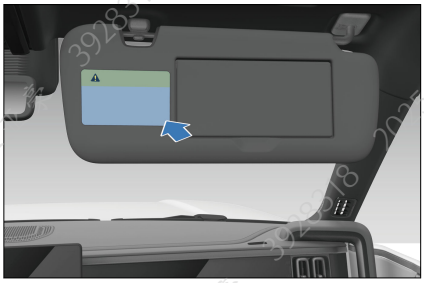
⑥ The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the engine intake manifold.

Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar. The vehicle nameplate includes company name, brand, country of manufacture, vehicle model, seating capacity, year and month of manufacture, drive motor model, peak power of drive motor, engine model, rated voltage of high-voltage battery system, maximum net engine power, rated capacity of high-voltage battery system, VIN, engine displacement and maximum allowable total mass.

Warning Labels

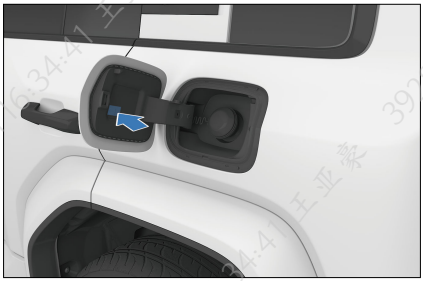
The airbag warning label is printed on the right sun visor.



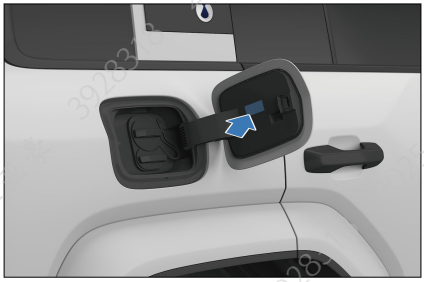
The tire pressure label is attached on the lower part of the left B-pillar.

The A/C system and cooling fan label is affixed to the right side of the hood's inner panel.

The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The charging connector use tip label is attached to the inner surface of the charge port door.



Transponder Mounting

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.

CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Smart Key

ANATEL

Brazil

Model: HT4-92

Certificate ID: 01535-25-04522

This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

TDRA

ER43020/25
United Arab Emirates

The United Arab Emirates

Model: HT4-92

Corner MmWave Radar

	EU countries Certificate ID: RED GZES2210019337AT
	Brazil Certificate ID: 12803-22-14807 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.
	Paraguay Certificate ID: 2024-05-I-0432
	EU R10 Certificate ID: E24*10R06/02*5295*00

Front MmWave Radars Certification

	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2019.04.0003
	Brazil Certificate ID: 06354-19-12386 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

	EU R10 Certificate ID: E24*10R06/02*4954*00
IFETEL: XXXXX	Mexico Certificate ID: RLVVE7719-1064

Numerics

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

K

L

M

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System	HEV	Hybrid Electric Vehicles
EV	Electric Vehicle	EDR	Event Data Recorder
NFC	Near Field Communication	SOC	State of Charge
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control	ICC	Intelligent Cruise Control
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	AEB	Automatic Emergency Braking
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
LDA	Lane Departure Assist	LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LDP	Lane Departure Prevention	ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist
EPS	Electrical Power Steering	BSA	Blind Spot Assist
DOW	Door Open Warning	RCW	Rear Collision Warning
RCTA	Rear Collision Traffic Alert	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alert System	ABS	Antilock Braking System
ESC	Electronic Stability Controller	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
TCS	Traction Control System	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
HDC	Hill Descent Control	OTA	Over-the-Air
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum
USB	Universal Serial Bus		